Unit 1

Warm-Up

A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Fact</th>
<th>Opinion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>TV programs were much better ten years ago.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Most young children spend too much time in front of a television</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>When Neil Armstrong stepped onto the surface of the moon in 1969, about 500 million people were watching him on TV.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Fewer young people are watching television, according to a report by media analysts at Ofcom.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Television in the future is going to be totally different.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Sixty-six percent of Americans regularly watch television while they are eating dinner.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>The first television sets were huge but they had very small screens.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>TV makes children less intelligent.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>In the future, you won't need a screen to watch television.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B

1. simple present: 2, 6, 8
   present progressive: 4, 6
   simple past: 1, 3, 7
   past progressive: 3
   future with will: 9
   future with be going to: 5
2. 2, 8. These statements use the simple present and don’t include words or phrases that tell when they might happen.
3. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9. These statements use a past or future tense and include words or phrases that tell when the statements would be true.

C

Future: will regret
past: didn’t do, did do

Activity 1: Identifying Main Verbs and Helping Verbs

The worst advice I have ever received was from a friend. She told me not to take an overseas trip. I was planning because it would be too expensive. I ignored her advice and took the trip anyway. I had the most thrilling time of my life. I am a classical pianist, and I was already planning a trip to St. Petersburg, Russia to play in a piano competition there. At the time, I was living in Los Angeles, California, so it was quite a long journey to Russia. I thought to myself, as long as I would be 6,000 miles away from home, I might as well stay longer than just the two-day competition. I would visit some other places near St. Petersburg, too.

Because I am a classical musician, I wanted to visit the homes of some great composers. I went to Finland and saw the small house where Jean Sibelius had composed most of his symphonies. In St. Petersburg, I took a tour of the home of Nikolai Rimsky-Korsakov. He was a composer and teacher. His most famous student was Igor Stravinsky—I actually played on Stravinsky’s piano. For a pianist like me, it was a great thrill.

After three fantastical weeks in Finland and Russia, it was time to go home. My friend was right—the trip wasn’t cheap. But I’m glad that I ignored her advice and went on the trip. Now I have memories that will stay with me for the rest of my life.

Activity 2: Be, Do, and Have: Main Verb or Helping Verb?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Helping Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>There are about 7 billion people in the world today.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>The number of people in the world is increasing.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Populations have doubled in many countries over the last 20–30 years.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>The fastest-growing country is Uganda.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>In some countries, the population is decreasing.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>The U.S. population has grown by nearly 18 million since 2000.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Many countries do a census every 5 or 10 years. That’s when the government counts the number of people in the country.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Today roughly 301 million people are living in the U.S.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Some experts believe that in 50 years, the world will have 9 billion people.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>New York City’s population has passed 8.25 million.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>“We have an enormous population here,” said the mayor of New York.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Human population is a key factor in the health of the planet.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Population has always been a controversial topic.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Some countries don’t have a population problem.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>During the period from 1877 to 1913, the U.S. population was growing at a staggering rate.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Activity 3: Identifying Main Verbs
1. Some students pursue master’s degrees, while others study to receive doctorates.
2. For example, business students get an MBA, which means “Master of Business Administration.”
3. A doctorate is the highest degree that a student can earn.
4. Most medical doctors train for an MD, which comes from the Latin medicinae doctor.
5. Someone with a PhD is a doctor of philosophy.
6. Many students earn a PhD, but not many study the field of philosophy specifically.
7. In 2010, almost 50,000 students received a PhD.
8. Most of the degrees were in science and engineering.
9. Some students complete a master’s program before they start a PhD program.
10. A PhD usually requires three years of full-time study, and then students must pass special exams.
11. PhD students also carry out original research.
12. Students present their findings by writing a long research report or dissertation, which can take years to complete.
13. Doctoral students may experience a lot of stress.

Activity 4: Learning Grammar from a Dictionary
1. saw
2. seen
3. a. Please see if anyone is here yet.  
   b. I’m beginning to see the advantages of living in a city.  
   c. I see us living in the country in 20 years.  
   d. You can see that bus from two miles away.  
   e. You should see a doctor right away.  
   f. You must see the exhibit before it closes!  
   g. My grandfather doesn’t see very well.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. See who is at the front door.
2. I’ll see you in class tomorrow.
3. I don’t see my sister as a lawyer.
4. I’ll see you in class tomorrow.

Activity 5: Exploring Uses of the Simple Present
1. Most people don’t get enough sleep.  
2. Silence is golden.  
3. It snows here a lot in the winter.  
4. I’m a little hungry now.  
5. I have dark brown hair and brown eyes.  
6. I don’t need anything right now.  
7. Some scientists say musical training seems to improve communication skills.
8. It takes two or three years to get a master’s degree.  
9. I don’t always have breakfast.  
10. You need a license to practice medicine.  
11. The General Assembly of the United Nations meets for several months every year.

Think about It
Sentences 4 and 6 describe what is happening now.

Activity 6: Spelling Analysis
1. If the y comes after a vowel, we just add -s. If the y comes after a consonant, we change the y to i and add -es.
2. We add -es instead of -s when the word ends in -sh, -ch, -ss, -z, or -x.
3. a. denies
   b. matches
   c. suggests
   d. relaxes
   e. supplies

Activity 7: Subject-Verb Agreement
1. The coastline in three cups of coffee seems to have a positive effect on women but not men. According to one study, female coffee drinkers over the age of 60 are less likely to experience a decline in verbal skills.
2. Experts say that most people need about 8 hours of sleep a night. Unfortunately, not everyone gets it. According to the National Sleep Foundation’s annual survey, the average adult gets just 6.9 hours of sleep a night. New research suggests that a decline in sleep time means a decline in your health.
3. Tobacco smoke contains over 4,000 chemicals. Researchers claim that tobacco smoke has as many as 60 substances that may cause cancer.
4. Many people today change jobs frequently. As a matter of fact, some studies say that the average person holds at least 7 jobs before he or she reaches age 30. What may be more surprising, though, is that many people have several careers in their lifetime.
5. People have many reasons for making career changes. Some come to the end of their career plan. Others find that their career plan is no longer right for them. Many people want to pursue personal interests or run a business of their own.

Think about It
These writers are making general statements.

Activity 8: Error Correction
1. I really admire my father. He is a mechanic, and he knows a lot about cars, stoves, and other machines. My father is self-employed, and he travels to people’s houses to fix things. Whenever I’m home, I go with him on his jobs so that I can watch him. In my opinion, anybody who knows how to fix things is a genius. I guess that makes my father a genius.
2. My grandfather takes very good care of himself. He gets up early in the morning so he can do tai chi in the park near his house. He tries to get his wife, my grandmother, to join him, but she doesn’t like to exercise, so he always goes by himself.
3. My mother is the most hard-working person I know. She doesn’t have a paying job like my father; she has a job that doesn’t pay. My mother takes care of our house. She takes care of everyone and everything in our house. She keeps the house clean, and she cooks the best food you will ever have. Beyond all this, I think my mother is the only person who understands me.
4. I am from Costa Rica, but my roommate is from the U.S. Needless to say, her English is a lot better than mine. The thing I especially like about her is that she helps me with my English. Whenever I say something incorrectly, she just says it correctly for me.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
My sister works harder than anyone I know. She is a mom, but she is also a lawyer. She works hard to help other families, and she works hard taking care of her own family.
Activity 9: Simple Present or Present Progressive?
1. A: Nice piano. Who plays it?
   B: Nobody anymore.
2. A: That's my favorite piano piece. Who is playing it?
   B: That's Uchida.
3. A: David tells us you move furniture.
   B: That's right. It's a family business.
4. A: Why are you moving the furniture?
   B: Because I need to clean the floor.
5. A: I don't know how to say this.
   B: Say what?
   A: Well, um, I just . . . I just . . .
   B: What are you trying to say, James?
6. A: I can't move this thing.
   B: Yes, you can. You just aren't trying hard enough.
7. A: What are you listening to?
   B: It's a group called the Bald Eagles. Do you like it?
   A: Not especially. Could you turn it down?
8. A: Do you want to choose some music for the trip?
   B: Sure. What kind of music do you listen to?
   A: Usually jazz, but anything's OK.
9. A: What are you doing up so late?
   B: I have jet lag.
10. A: That's a steep driveway. What do you do when it snows?
    B: I stay home.
11. A: Why are you wearing a coat?
    B: Because it's cold in here.
12. A: Do you wear a school uniform?
    B: Yes, it's brown and white. I'll show it to you someday.

Think about It
The speakers in conversations 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9, and 11 chose the present progressive because they were talking or asking about something in progress at that time.

The speakers in conversations 1, 3, 8, 10, and 12 chose the simple present because they were asking about something habitual.

Activity 10: Habitual or Temporary?

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Amanda sees John at his computer.</td>
<td>Amanda: Why (do you talk / are you talking) to the computer? John: I (try / am trying) to follow every step correctly to set up this program!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Emma and her husband, Matt, share the housecleaning.</td>
<td>This week it is Matt's turn to clean the house. Matt: Emma, can you pick up your clothes? You (leave / are leaving) them on the floor all the time! Emma: But I (pick up / am picking up) my clothes when I clean the house!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Kate sees her husband emptying boxes on the floor of the living room.</td>
<td>Kate: What (do you do / are you doing)? Husband: I (look for / am looking for) my cell phone. Kate: But you (make / are making) a big mess of everything! I just packed those boxes!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Mika and Isabel like to do gardening.</td>
<td>Mika: When (do roses bloom / are roses blooming) in this part of the country? Isabel: I think they (bloom / are blooming) in late June.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Sarah has decided to change some things in her life because she wants a healthier lifestyle. Rob notices the change.
   Rob: (Do you exercise / Are you exercising) every day now?
   Sarah: Yes, and I (Don't eat / am not eating) meat anymore either. I (eat / am eating) more vegetables and fruits instead.

6. Mary is taking her daughter to school in the morning. Mary sees her daughter behind her and calls out to her.
   Mary: Hurry up! Why (do you walk / are you walking) so slowly?
Activity 14: Distinguishing Action and Non-Action Verbs

1. Everybody is talking today about the economy.
2. Men and women belong to different species, and communication between them is still in its infancy.
3. The Internet is becoming the town square for the global village of tomorrow.
4. Whenever people agree with me, I always feel I must be wrong.
5. A man possesses talent; he is a genius.
6. I buy expensive suits. They just look cheap on me.
7. I know that I am intelligent because I know that I know nothing.
8. The more I see, the less I know for sure.
9. I don’t care what anybody says about me as long as it isn’t wrong.
10. We hire people who want to make the best things in the world.

Think about It
We use both the simple present and the present progressive for active and non-active meanings.

Activity 15: Choosing the Correct Meaning

1. A: Everybody is talking today about the economy. b: Sure. I’d love to.
2. A: The chess club is meeting tonight. Are you going? b: Yes, I love to.
4. A: Are the children behaving themselves? B: No, I don’t own a car. (no errors)
5. A: Are you going anywhere during the break? B: Nothing special.
7. A: What are you thinking about cutting your hair? B: Yes, it’s much too long.
8. A: Can I use your phone? B: No, of course not.
10. A: Do you want to go out to dinner? B: We’re having some friends over tonight. Can you come?

Think about It
For the verb have, definitions b, c, and d have an active meaning. Definition a has a non-active meaning.
For the verb doubt, definitions b has an active meaning. Definition a has a non-active meaning.
For the verb see, definitions a, b, and d have an active meaning. Definitions c and e have a non-active meaning.
For the verb appear, definitions a, c, and d have an active meaning. Definition b has a non-active meaning.
For the verb think, definitions b and c have an active meaning. Definition a has a non-active meaning.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
A: Do you have any children?
B: Yes, I have three sons.
A: I’m thinking about changing jobs soon.
B: Really? Why is that?

Activity 17: Simple Present or Present Progressive?

1. A: What are you doing in Los Angeles? B: Oh, we are seeing some old friends from college.
2. A: Why are you worrying so much about Matt? B: Because I don’t see how he’s going to find a job. He’s not even trying.
3. A: Do you like to travel? B: Yes, I love to.
4. A: How’s your vacation going? B: We are enjoying every minute of it.
5. A: What do you think of your new boss? B: She is a really nice person.
6. A: Are the children behaving themselves? B: No, they are being unusually naughty today.
7. A: Can I use your phone? B: Sorry, but I don’t have one.
8. A: This is my friend Carlos. He is having dinner here, too. B: Nice to meet you.
10. A: I’m really angry about last night. B: I’m sorry you feel that way.
11. A: Do you know what you are going to do? B: Yeah, I am thinking of taking some time off to relax.

Activity 18: Error Correction

1. A: Is this your car? B: No, I don’t own a car. (no errors)
2. A: The chess club is meeting tonight. Are you going? B: No, I don’t belong to that club.
3. A: Do you prefer to stay home tonight? B: I don’t care. What do you want to do?
5. A: Why are you looking at me like that? B: Like what?
16. A: What do you think of this TV? Do you like it better than the other one?
B: Well, this one’s bigger, but the other one’s cheaper.
7. A: What are you looking at?
   B: There's something on the street over there.
   A: What is it?
   B: I'm not sure. It looks like a box. (no errors)

8. A: Is this wood or plastic? I can't tell.
   B: It feels like plastic.

9. A: Are you looking for something?
   B: Yes, I need something to write with.

Activity 19: Distinguishing Regular and Irregular Verbs
After the American War of Independence, the new government ordered a census—a count of the number of people in each state. Work on the census started in August 1790, about a year after George Washington became president. The law required that census takers visit every family. These workers walked or rode on horseback to gather their data. In all, they counted 3.9 million census takers visit every family. These workers walked or rode on horseback to gather their data. In all, they counted 3.9 million people.

The first census asked for little more than a person's name and address. Over the years, the government added more questions to the census. By 1820, there were questions about a person's job. Later, questions about crime, education, and wages appeared on the census form.

As the country's population grew and the quantity of data increased, new technology helped census workers. In 1890, clerks began to use a keypunch device to add the numbers. In 1950, the census used its first computer to process data.

Today most people receive a census form in the mail. If they don't fill it out and return it by mail, they still get a visit from a census taker.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGULAR VERBS</th>
<th>IRREGULAR VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base form</td>
<td>Simple past form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordered</td>
<td>ordered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>started</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>require</td>
<td>required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>walked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count</td>
<td>counted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>asked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add</td>
<td>added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appear</td>
<td>appeared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increase</td>
<td>increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>helped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use</td>
<td>used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 20: Using the Simple Past
Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519) grew up in a small town near Florence, Italy. As the son of a wealthy man, he received the best education that Florence could offer. Leonardo became known for his ability to create sculptures and paintings that looked almost lifelike. Much of his success in this area came from his interest in nature. He also studied human anatomy and used this knowledge to make his figures realistic.

As a child, Leonardo was fascinated with machines and began to draw his own inventions. He drew flying machines, armored tanks, and aircraft landing gear. He even designed a diver’s suit with tubes and air chambers to allow a swimmer to stay underwater for long periods of time.

Much of what we know about Leonardo comes from the thousands of pages of notes and sketches he kept in his notebooks. He used mirror, or reverse, writing, starting at the right side of the page and moving across to the left. No one is sure why Leonardo wrote this way. Some think he wanted to keep people from reading and stealing his ideas.

Activity 21: Exploring Uses of the Simple Past
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Bill Gates formed Microsoft, one of the biggest computer companies in the world.
2. There were many natural disasters—floods, earthquakes, and storms—in the news last year.
3. I got my first job last year.
4. a. Did you want something?
   b. I wanted to ask you a favor.
   c. How did you want to pay for this?
   d. What was your name again?
   e. Did you need to speak with me?

Think about It
Answers will vary.

Activity 22: Using Time Expressions and Clauses
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. a. I graduated five years ago.
   b. I got married a year ago.
2. a. I traveled throughout the ‘90s.
   b. I moved into my house in 2010.
3. a. During the 2000s, I worked at three different hospitals.
4. a. When I was 5 years old, I broke my arm.
   b. When I was 10 years old, I started learning English.
5. a. I learned to drive when I was 15 years old.
   b. I got a car after I graduated from high school.
6. a. I learned to read before I started school.
   b. I lived with my grandmother when I was a child.

Activity 23: Error Correction
1. In the past, a woman's place was in the home. Women took care of their families and the house. Men earned the money that supported the family.
2. In high school, we had a lot of clubs. My best friend and I joined the chess club even though we weren't really interested in chess.
3. Today I am going to talk about dangerous sports. This topic interests me because I play a dangerous sport.
4. When I was 18, I went hiking in the mountains with my friends. The only thing I took with me was my father's expensive camera because I wanted to take some pictures from the top of the mountain. I carried that camera very carefully all the way to the top of the mountain, but when I got there, the camera didn't work.
5. Jaime is one of my best friends now. I met him last year when this class began. I think we get along because we like many of the same things.
6. My father's illness affected me a lot because I thought he was a young and healthy person. Everything happened so fast.

Activity 24: Noticing Past Progressive Verbs
I remember exactly what I was doing when I heard the news on September 11, 2001. I'd gone to the kitchen at work to get coffee, and I was walking back past co-workers' desks to the other end of the office. As I passed, I caught people's voices: “... a plane ... the North tower ...”, and I realized something was up. I got back to my desk, sat down, and looked up BBC News. I got no further work done that day. I was 26.

I remember exactly what I was doing when I heard that Princess Diana had died. I woke up to the news on the radio. I was 22.

I remember exactly what I was doing when I heard that Margaret Thatcher had resigned. I walked, slightly late, into a math class. Ben Anderson, a classmate, looked up and said, “She's resigned.” I asked, “Who?” I was almost 16.
Think about It
The writer uses both tenses in some sentences because he is talking about something that was in progress (past progressive) when another action (simple past) took place.

Activity 25: Describing Events in the Past

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. "I live in the south of France, so when it was midnight here, it was only 6:00 in New York. Anyway, at that hour a friend and I were watching TV."
2. "At midnight, as the photo indicates, I was out with friends and we were listening to music."
3. "I was sitting in a crowded subway car in New York City, somewhere near Times Square."
4. "We were eating pizza, and all of a sudden my friend asked, 'What time is it?' I looked at the clock, and it was midnight."
5. "At midnight we were watching the fireworks outside. That went on for about ten minutes!"
6. "To be honest, I was sleeping at midnight. I had to get up early the next day, so I couldn't stay up until midnight."
7. "I was traveling on an airplane. The flight attendant announced that it was midnight, and everyone started cheering."
8. "I had a paper I needed to finish, so I was working in the library until 2:00 a.m. I didn't even notice when it was midnight."

Activity 26: Remembering a Frightening Event
The scariest experience I remember was an airplane flight I took many years ago. I was traveling from Istanbul to Prague and I had two flights. First, I flew to Zurich, and then I changed planes to fly to Prague. The first flight was fine, but by the time I landed in Zurich, it was snowing heavily.

The snowstorm was getting/was worse and worse by the minute, but we still took off. As the plane was climbing, the turbulence started. The plane was shaking back and forth and up and down. I was squeezing/squeezed the armrest as hard as I could. Some of the other passengers were crying, and one woman screamed when the plane hit a big bump.

When we reached the final altitude, everything suddenly stopped. The passengers clapped for the pilot and most people relaxed. But I kept my seat belt on for the rest of the flight!

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

The scariest experience I remember was a big storm when I was about 5 years old. It was very dark and there was a lot of loud thunder. My parents were watching the TV, and they told me and my brother to go into the bathroom and close the door until they told us it was safe. I was so happy when the storm was over!

Activity 27: Making Polite Requests

1. I was wondering if you could help me.
2. I was wondering if you needed some help.
3. I was wondering if you could send me an application form.
4. I was wondering if I could make an appointment to talk with you.
5. I was wondering if you were ready to eat.
6. I was wondering if you could come over and help me for a minute.
7. I was wondering if you had a few minutes to talk.
8. I was wondering if you were doing anything tomorrow night.
9. I was wondering if you could explain that to me again.

Activity 28: Prediction or Future Plan?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prediction/Expectation</th>
<th>Future Plan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I am going to produce a movie of my own.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Choose a job you love, and you will never have to work a day in your life.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. It's going to be a season with lots of accidents.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I am not young, but I feel young. The day I feel old, I will go to bed and stay there.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Look deep into nature, and then you will understand everything better.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I'm not going to change the way I look or the way I feel to conform to anything.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. A quick temper will make a fool of you soon enough.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Give me six hours to chop down a tree, and I will spend the first four sharpening the axe.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. I am going to spend my time today just thanking the people that played a role in my career.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. America is the most grandiose experiment the world has seen, but, I am afraid, it is not going to be a success.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. In the next 50 to 75 years, people will be living to be 130 or 140. They'll be working until they're 100.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. At an Olympic Game, you want to enjoy it—especially if you know it's going to be your last one.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

I think the speaker chose will be living because he's describing what he thinks will happen in the future.

Activity 29: Expressing Future Plans

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. A: I'm really tired.
   B: Come on, then. I'll take you home.
2. A: We need to do something about the car.
   B: Don't worry about it. I'm going to take care of it.
3. A: Have you heard the news about Lisa and Tim?
   B: No, what news?
   A: They're going to get married in the fall.
   B: Will you relax, please?
5. A: Did you talk to Bob about the presentation?
   B: No, I forgot. Sorry about that. I'll call him tomorrow.
6. A: Are you ready to order?
   B: Yes, I'll have the fish special and a salad.
7. A: The food looks delicious.
   B: I hope everything is OK. Will you try one of the sandwiches and tell me if it tastes good?
8. A: Can you help me next week?
   B: Oh, I didn’t tell you?
   A: Tell me what?
   B: We’re going to be in California all next week.
9. A: Can I get you anything else?
   B: Yes, I think I’ll have another cup of coffee.

Think about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

In sentence 1, the speaker is offering help (will). In sentences 2, 3, and 8, the speaker talks about a planned or scheduled future event (be going to). In sentences 4 and 7, the speaker makes a request (will). In sentence 5, the speaker makes a promise (will). In sentences 6 and 9, the speaker makes a decision at the moment of speaking (will).

Activity 30: Analyzing Predictions

The demand for coal is growing steadily. Coal accounted for 26 percent of energy consumed in 2004 worldwide, according to the U.S. Energy Information Agency, and will grow to 28 percent by 2030. Total energy consumption, however, will rise by a few percentage points a year, so in the same period of time, coal consumption will rise to 74 percent.

India and China will account for 72 percent of the increase, but coal consumption is expected to also rise in Russia, South Africa, and the U.S. In the U.S., the growth could decline, but coal will still be a big part of the energy profile.

"Ninety percent of the fossil fuel reserves in the U.S., India, and China are in coal, and China and India are not going to move from this fuel in the future," said Jeremy Carl of Stanford University. "They are not going to turn off the lights."

Think about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

The writer could use either be going to or will in the last paragraph because he or she is making a prediction but without clear physical evidence. The statements are not general beliefs or absolute certainties.

Activity 31: Making Predictions with Will

1. We will be able to control the weather.
2. Most people will work from their homes.
3. There will be one kind of money for the whole world.
4. Everyone will have computers wired to their brains.
5. Space elevators will make space travel cheap.
6. Deserts will become tropical forests.
7. We will have the ability to communicate through thought transmission.
8. There will be only three languages in the world—English, Spanish, and Chinese.

Activity 32: Using Be Going To for Predictions

1. The sun is rising, and there are no clouds in the sky. You think to yourself: It is going to be a nice day.
2. It’s half an hour after class usually starts, and your teacher still hasn’t arrived. One of your classmates says: I guess we are not going to have class today.
3. You get to the bus stop in the morning just as the bus is leaving. You say to yourself: Now I am going to be late for work.
4. A friend sees you using a tool incorrectly. He says to you: Be careful. You are going to get hurt.
5. You see a family member eating a second big bowl of ice cream. You say: You are going to make yourself sick.
6. Your friend is cooking fish for dinner, but he bakes it too long, and it burns completely. You say: I guess we are not going to have fish for dinner.
7. You expected 50 people to come to the lecture, but already there are more than 50 people in the room. You say to your assistant: We are going to need more chairs.
8. You and your friends are planning to drive to the beach. You try to start the car, but nothing happens. One of your friends says: I guess we are not going to go anywhere today.

Activity 33: Talking about the Future with Present Forms

Students will circle the time expressions in the Think about It activity.

1. A: When is your flight tomorrow?
   B: I think it leaves at 6, but I’m not sure.
   A: Nonstop flight?
   B: No, I change in London.
   A: Do you have a long layover?
   B: No, only two hours.
   A: Oh, that’s not bad.
2. A: Are you going to the meeting next week?
   B: Yes, I plan to.
   A: What time does it start?
   B: At 7.
3. A: Are you doing anything special this weekend?
   B: Um, I already have plans (for Saturday), but I'm free on Sunday.
   A: What time does it start?
   B: Great. There’s a concert in the afternoon. Interested?
   A: Sure.
   B: It starts at 3, so I’ll come by at 2.
   A: OK.
4. A: When’s the last day of school?
   B: June 15.
   A: Is that a Friday?
   B: No, it’s a Wednesday.
5. A: Are you going to the concert tonight?
   B: Yeah. What time does it begin?
   A: Let me check.

Activity 34: Present or Future?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Now</th>
<th>In the future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about It

Students should write at least six of the following:

at noon
tonight
yet then
tomorrow
after the semester ends
in the fall
Activity 35: Simple Present or Present Progressive?

1. A: When does the first train leave tomorrow morning?
   B: At seven.

2. A: Where’s the train?
   B: You didn’t hear the announcement?
   A: No. What did it say?
   B: The seven o’clock train is leaving an hour late this morning.

3. A: Hurry up. We’re going to be late.
   B: What time does the movie start?
   A: In 15 minutes.

4. A: Do you want to go for lunch tomorrow?
   B: Um, I’m not working tomorrow. I have a doctor’s appointment.

5. A: Who is coming to the meeting tonight?
   B: I’m not sure.

6. A: I have some good news.
   B: What is it?
   A: They’re fixing the elevators tomorrow, so the office isn’t opening until 11 in the morning.

Think about It

2, 6

Activity 36: Present Progressive or Be Going to?

Because students will not have access to the original quotations, accept both contractions and spelled-out versions of helping verbs.

1. I don’t know where I’m going from here, but I promise it won’t be boring.

2. If you can’t read, it’s going to be hard to realize dreams.

3. I’m going to college. I don’t care if it ruins my career. I’d rather be smart than a movie star.

4. The desktop market has entered the dark ages, and it’s going to be in the dark ages for the next ten years.

5. I know this is going to end bad, but I’m going to pretend it’s going to end good.

6. It’s not going to be easy to change things.

7. Things are going to get a lot worse before they get worse.

8. Sooner or later I’m going to die, but I’m not going to retire.

Think about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

I used be going to for all the sentences except 1 and 3 because they made predictions or expressed expectations.

Activity 37: Talking about Future Requirements

1. Class begins at 9, and you need to be here on time.
   Class begins at 9, and you are to be here on time.

2. The school field trip will be on June 15. Your child should bring a lunch and something to drink.
   The school field trip will be on June 15. Your child is to bring a lunch and something to drink.

3. The bus is going to leave at 7:15, so everyone should be at the parking lot by 7.
   The bus is going to leave at 7:15, so everyone is to be at the parking lot by 7.

4. Your appointment with the mayor is at noon. You need to arrive at the reception desk by 11:45.
   Your appointment with the mayor is at noon. You are to arrive at the reception desk by 11:45.

5. I need to go out for a few minutes, but no one should leave the room while I am away. Is that clear?
   I need to go out for a few minutes, but no one is to leave the room while I am away. Is that clear?

6. You will have 30 minutes to answer the exam question. When I say stop, you should put down your pencil.
   You will have 30 minutes to answer the exam question. When I say stop, you are to put down your pencil.

7. Your doctor’s appointment is at 10 a.m. Please don’t eat or drink anything in the morning.
   Your doctor’s appointment is at 10 a.m. You are not to eat or drink anything in the morning.

8. We have important visitors next Monday. Everyone should dress up a bit.
   We have important visitors next Monday. Everyone is to dress up a bit.

Activity 38: Using Contractions

1. What are you doing? Nothing special. I am just taking a break.

2. Where is the train?
   A: In 15 minutes.

3. When is the next exam? It is on the fifth. That is a Friday.

4. A: What time does the movie start?
   B: The seven o’clock train is leaving an hour late this morning.

5. Is it cold outside? I think so.

6. We have a test tomorrow. I know.

7. Where do you want to go for lunch? I don’t care.

Activity 39: Common Verbs in the Simple Present

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. Where do you want to go for lunch? I don’t care.

2. Are you coming to class tomorrow? I suppose so.

3. We have a test tomorrow. I know.

4. It’s late. I don’t mind.

5. It says stop. You are to put down your pencil.

6. You are coming back in a week.

10. How long are they going to be there? Not long. I think they are coming back in a week.

Activity 40: Telling a Story

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

While I’m sitting on the subway on my way to work, I notice that there is a grapefruit on the floor of the subway. I am in New York, so I am not surprised to see that there is a piece of fruit abandoned on the floor. I am also not surprised that no one else has noticed it yet.

Suddenly, the train lurches around a turn, sending the grapefruit rolling. I see that the man sitting a few seats down notices the rolling grapefruit now, and I watch as he leans forward to stop it. Instead of leaving it on the floor as I suspected he would, he picks up the grapefruit and puts it on the seat next to him. Although I find it strange, I quickly lose my interest as I think about the dinner that is waiting for me at home.

I forget all about the grapefruit until a couple of stops later, when the train is filling up. I notice a young man is staring intently at the grapefruit, though no one else notices him. At the next stop, the train fills even more. This is when people become aware that there is a seat taken by a grapefruit instead of a person and...
that a young man wants to sit in it. He notices the attention he has and says, "I'm not giving up a seat for a piece of fruit." He picks up the grapefruit and then sits in the seat.

When we reach my stop, I get up to leave, along with the man who put the grapefruit in the spot in the first place. Both of us take one more look at the young man holding the grapefruit. He has the grapefruit on his backpack on his lap, and he's smiling.

Activity 41: Using the Simple Present in Summaries
1. Title: Real Men Don't Need Work-Life Balance
   Author: Tanvi Gautam
   Source: Forbes magazine
   Summary: This article focuses on the issue of work-life balance for men. Many firms assume that men do not need career flexibility or work-life integration. However, these assumptions are generally not accurate. The author argues that firms need to consider men when they design policies to promote flexibility.
2. Title: Margaret C. Anderson's Little Review
   Author: Sophia Estante; Lorrie Moore
   Source: The Writing Center at The University of Wisconsin–Madison
   Summary: This research looks at the work of Margaret C. Anderson, the editor of the Little Review. The research draws upon mostly primary sources including memoirs, published letters, and a complete collection of the Little Review. Most prior research on Anderson focuses on her connection to the famous writers and personalities that she published and associated with. This focus undermines her role as the dominant creative force behind one of the most influential little magazines published in the twentieth century. This case example shows how little magazine publishing is arguably a literary art.
3. Title: The Connection between Hypertension and Stress
   Authors: Michael Anderson; Karina Gomez; Peizhu Liu
   Summary: It has been established that stressful situations cause temporary spikes in blood pressure, but researchers are unsure of the relationship between stress and long-term hypertension. The purpose of this study is to understand this relationship and to find out if short-term spikes in blood pressure due to stress can add up and cause high blood pressure in the long term. The data for this study comes from a series of tests conducted on forty participants of various backgrounds in the San Francisco Bay Area over a period of twenty years. The researchers also looked at statistical data from the California Board of Health over the past twenty years. Even though the researchers found mixed test results, the study shows that daily exercise and focused stress management lowers the risk of hypertension over time. However, medical researchers must conduct more studies in order to determine the link between the frequency of short term spikes in stress and long-term hypertension.

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS
1. simple past and present perfect
2. The summaries include general information.
3. They leave out specific details.
4. The purpose of an abstract or summary is to provide the main ideas of the article.

Activity 42: Evaluate

A
Self-discipline is the most important ingredient for success. When you set a goal for yourself, you have to work to reach it. You need to study.

B
Self-discipline is the most important ingredient for success. My brother is a good example of the connection between self-discipline and success. When he was only 15, he decided that he wanted to be a doctor. From that point, he stopped playing sports and doing things with his friends so that he would have time to study. Every summer he gave up his vacation so that he could work in a hospital. Because he was self-disciplined, my brother is now a successful family doctor in my hometown.

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS
1. Paragraph A includes mostly simple present verbs. Paragraph B includes several different verb tenses.
2. Answers will vary.
3. Paragraph B provides specific details and examples.

Activity 43: Using the Simple Past to Give Specific Examples

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Agree: Athletic competition is not good for very young children. When my brother was very young, he played on a children’s soccer team. His best friend wanted to play on the team too, but he wasn’t a very good player. The other children on the team didn’t want my brother’s friend to be on the team because they wanted to win. Soccer was a competition for them, not a game, and so at the age of seven, my brother’s friend quit playing soccer.
2. Disagree: Anger is never beneficial. When I am angry, I often do things that I regret later. When I was angry at a friend, I said things to him that later I wished I hadn’t said. That made him angry at me, too. Fortunately, we talked, he understood, and we are still friends, but it doesn’t always turn out that way.
3. Agree: People are still superstitious. Many people don’t trust in science, so they believe things that are not possible. For example, when my friend got married recently, she still followed the old superstition that she had to have “something old, something new, something borrowed, something blue.” There is nothing that proves that this superstition will help her marriage, but she still felt that she had to follow it.
4. Disagree: Learning a second language is good for small children. Friends of mine, who speak English and Spanish in their home, taught their daughter both languages when she was small. As a result, she is very good in both languages now. Small children who learn a second language often grow up to be very good at learning languages in general.

Activity 44: Exploring Verb Forms in Research Reports
1. In one report on how intelligence develops in young children, American researchers studied nearly 500 boys and girls born in New Jersey hospitals between 1984 and 1987. When they were born, each child weighed less than 2,000 grams, and they were approximately 16 years old when they participated in the study. The children took intelligence and motor skill tests at home. (Motor skills are skills that require living things to effectively use their muscles.)

   The test results were then compared with test results of other children of the same age. The study reported that the children with low birth weight often have more problems with motor skills than the other children. This suggests that babies with low birth weight may be more likely than other children to have physical and mental problems as they develop.
2. A major study from the University of North Carolina compared two groups of children. One group of children attended an all-day childcare center from when they were a few weeks old until the age of 5. This high-quality program offered some social, health, and educational programs, and it provided healthy food for the children. The other group of children did not go to a childcare center at any time. Both groups attended public schools after the age of 5.

The two groups of children were similar when they were babies, but different after the age of about 18 months. As babies, both groups had similar results in tests for mental and physical skills. However, the children in the childcare program scored much higher in tests after the age of 18 months. The children took tests again at the ages of 12 and 15 years. Again, the children from the childcare center showed better test scores.

The study suggests that education during the first months and years of life are important for development later in life. The researchers say that with early education, poorer children could become more successful and do better in school. They believe their study shows a need for the government to spend money on public education at an early age. They claim these kinds of programs create better success overall in American schools.

Wrap-Up

A
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ten years ago</th>
<th>Now</th>
<th>Ten years from now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was living in Mexico with my parents. It was a happy time for my family because everyone was healthy.</td>
<td>I am living here with my wife. We have two small children, a boy and a girl. We are renting a nice apartment near the park. My wife is working as a dental assistant, and I am going to school and driving a taxi.</td>
<td>I will probably be living here. Hopefully I will have a good job and my wife will, too. Our two children will be in high school. We will have our own house and car. We will take vacations in Mexico to visit our family.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Topic: Study Habits
How many hours per week do you usually study outside of class?
Did you usually do your homework in high school?
Do you study alone or with other people?
Do you go to the library to study?
How much time do you usually study for each subject?

C
Answers will vary.

D
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
On May 15, many interesting things happened.
1. L. Frank Baum was born. He wrote *The Wonderful Wizard of Oz*.
2. Las Vegas, Nevada, was founded.
3. The Moscow subway system was first opened to the public.
4. Andy Murray, the tennis player, was born.
5. Henry's VIII's second wife, Anne Boleyn, was sentenced to death.
Unit 2

Warm-Up

A
1. true
2. false
3. true
4. true
5. true

B
1. There are four different forms of perfect verbs (present perfect, present perfect progressive, past perfect, future perfect).
2. since 1750; over the past 50 years, by 1900; since 1950; by 2050
3. We use the perfect forms of verbs when we want to connect events in the past with events in the present.

C
have never been, have never failed

Activity 1: Connecting Past Actions to Now
1. c
2. a
3. a
4. b
5. c
6. c
7. c
8. a

Think about It
The speakers also use the simple present. We use the present perfect when we're connecting things that happen in the past with things that are happening now.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present perfect action, event, or state</th>
<th>Connection to now (the present)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I've twisted my ankle.</td>
<td>My ankle hurts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I haven't had many meetings with Ms. James.</td>
<td>I don't know Ms. James very well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I've known Isabel Martinez for years.</td>
<td>I can tell you a lot about Isabel Martinez.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I've been to Los Angeles several times.</td>
<td>I know that public transportation there is bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. My brother has moved to El Paso.</td>
<td>He still has friends in Santa Fe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I've made other plans for tonight.</td>
<td>I can't go to the game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. I have seen your wallet.</td>
<td>I know that it's on the bureau.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. You've been different since the summer.</td>
<td>You are distracted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 2: Using the Present Perfect
Students will circle the time expressions in the Think about It activity.

Think about It
The writer uses the present perfect in sentences 1, 2, 4, and 7 to describe something that started in the past and continues to the present.
The writer uses the present perfect in sentence 3 to describe something that happened repeatedly in the past and has an effect on something in the present.
The writer uses the present perfect in sentences 5 and 6 to describe something that started and ended in the past but has an effect on something in the present.

Think about It
There are many uses of time expressions in the essay. We use time expressions often with the present perfect.

Activity 3: Using the Present Perfect
Students will underline the time expressions in the Think about It activity.

1. The United Nations Children’s Fund (UNICEF) has been very active in vaccinating children around the world.
2. I’m still feeling a pain in my right leg, so I haven’t gone to the gym this week.
3. I’ve been discouraged before — just like everyone else.
4. I haven’t taken a vacation in years, so I’m really looking forward to this trip.
5. My sister has done more in five years than most people do in a lifetime.
6. It is my hard work that has made me a success.
7. Thank you for the interest you’ve shown in my work.
8. My boss is very serious about the project. She’s talked about it a lot.
9. I walk everywhere and I play basketball. I do that three times a week, and I’ve lost thirty pounds so far. I feel so much better.
10. It hasn't snowed much for the past few years, and a number of ski resorts are closing.
11. Improvements in technology have allowed us to determine that Pluto is not a planet.
12. Scientists are just now discovering some of the strange living things that have adapted to life in the deep ocean.
13. The basic design of a bicycle has remained pretty much the same since the 1800s. Most bikes still use a foot-powered system that powers the back wheel.
14. Modern technology has made it easier for businesspeople to succeed. However, they still have problems getting money to start businesses.
15. China has become the world's dominant producer of solar panels in the last two years. It was responsible for half the world's production last year.

Think about It

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time expressions with the simple present</th>
<th>Time expressions with the present progressive</th>
<th>Time expressions with the present perfect</th>
<th>Time expressions with the simple past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in a lifetime</td>
<td>three times</td>
<td>this week before</td>
<td>last year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a week</td>
<td>just now</td>
<td>in years before</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>still</td>
<td></td>
<td>so far in five years for the past</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>few years since the 1800s in the last</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>two years</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about It

*Still* can be used with more than one verb form.

**Activity 5: Error Correction**
1. My parents have been here for only three years, but they like it very much.
2. I have only been here for a month, so I still get lost a lot.
3. My sister doesn't live with me anymore. She has gone to live in another state.
4. My mother is very smart even though she has never been to college.
5. I've tried to make a lot of new friends here, but it isn't easy.
6. My father has always given me help when I needed it.
7. I admire my professor because she has taught me to express my ideas better.
8. My parents have always given me good advice. I know I can go to them when I have a problem.
9. I want to go somewhere I have never been to before.
10. I miss my brother a lot. I haven't seen him for more than a year because he has been in Asia.
11. My brother doesn't know I have a new job because I have not told him.
12. Computers have changed our lives in many different ways. For example, in the past, it took days or weeks to communicate with someone on the other side of the world.

**Activity 7: Simple Past or Present Perfect?**
1. He's lost a lot of weight.
2. They've decided to go.
3. We talked about it.
4. I liked that house.
5. The game's started.
6. I've watched several movies.
7. We decided not to go.
8. He's made a lot of new friends there.
9. She's changed her phone number.
10. We've waited an hour for them.
11. I've wanted to go there.
12. She's called him.
13. He's saved a lot of money.
14. They sold their house.

**Activity 8: Finished Time or Time Up Until Now?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Finished time period</th>
<th>Time period up until now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Washington, D.C. has been the U.S. capital since 1800.</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. From 1790 to 1800, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, was the capital.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The U.S. Constitution was written in 1789, but it has changed over the years.</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. From 1800 to 1900, the U.S. experienced tremendous growth.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. The U.S. has had one civil war since it became a nation.</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. The U.S. Civil War took place in the mid-1800s.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Ever since the Civil War began in 1861, people have argued over what caused the war.</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Elements of Success • Student Book 3 • Unit 2**
proven problems created by the old.

ways to solve these problems. Hopefully, the twenty-first century

growth of the human population. Today scientists are working on
centuries have caused great damage to the earth's atmosphere.

Although technology has been very positive for the health of
health of technologies.

Doctors have learned to keep individuals alive longer using new
can at least be treated with medications.

people, in some ways it has had a negative effect on the planet.

In the past 200 years, Supreme Court decisions and laws have
increased the duties of the U.S. president.

the government has used the Supreme Court for new purposes, such as
determining the outcome of an election.

In 2005, the president appointed a new Chief Justice of the Supreme Court, John Roberts.

Activity 9: Simple Past or Present Perfect?
True/false answers will vary.
1. I have lived here for the past five years.
2. I haven't gone to Egypt yet, but I hope to go someday.
3. I was in junior high school from 2009 to 2012.
4. When I was a child, I sometimes got into trouble.
5. I've learned a lot of new words since I started school here.
6. I began to study English when I was 15 years old.
7. So far I've been to 8 different countries.
8. Last year was a great year for me.
9. I haven't eaten anything since I had dinner last night.
10. I didn't use my phone at all yesterday.
11. I haven't traveled very much over the past three years.
12. I haven't done any homework since we took the test a week ago.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I flew to France a year ago.
I finished college in 2010.
I’ve been learning English over the past few years.
I’ve been driving a car since I was a child.

Activity 10: Simple Past and the Present Perfect in Context
The development of new and more advanced technology has increased rapidly in the twentieth century. In the beginning of the 1900s, people relied on horses to get around. Letters took days or weeks to arrive, and traveling to other countries wasn’t easy. However, by the end of the century, people had cars, subways, and buses to get where they wanted to go. They communicated instantly by email. Travel from one country to another took hours, not months. Because of these things, I think that the growth in technology was one of the most important changes in the twentieth century.

Advances in technology have done more than make travel and communication quicker and more convenient; they have saved lives. People live much longer now than they did just 100 years ago. Some diseases that were once deadly have now been cured or can at least be treated with medications. Doctors have learned to keep individuals alive longer using new technologies.

Although technology has been very positive for the health of people, in some ways it has had a negative effect on the planet. The technological advances of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries have caused great damage to the earth’s atmosphere. There is also a shortage of natural resources caused by the rapid growth of the human population. Today scientists are working on ways to solve these problems. Hopefully, the twenty-first century will see the development of new technologies that can solve the problems created by the old.

Activity 11: Simple Past or Present Perfect?
1. Hayao Miyazaki began his career as an animator in 1963. He directed his first feature anime film 16 years later. Then he started a movie company of his own in 1985. In 2001, his movie Spirited Away won Best Film at the Japanese Academy Awards.
2. I started collecting comic books when I was young. My grandfather often took me to comic book stores, and I have been a fan ever since. I know it’s not the deepest reading in the world, but that’s why comic books are a great stress reliever.
3. History tells us a lot about ourselves. We can see how people did things a hundred years ago and figure out what we want to keep and what we want to change. Look at how different everything is today from what it was a hundred years ago. We have kept some things like schools and family but changed many other things.
4. My grandparents were born in Poland and later immigrated to the U.S. They left their families behind to start a new family here. I have many cousins in Poland but I have never met them. I think it would be fun to meet them and see how they live. I would also like to see where my grandparents lived in Poland and learn about what life was like for them when they were growing up.
5. Bicycles have always been a great form of transportation. They’re safe, fun, and economical. Today they’re also more convenient than ever. Bicycle designers have come up with a way to fold them so that now you can ride your bike to work, fold it up, and take it in with you.
6. Water shortages are a serious problem. Many areas have experienced droughts because of climate change. Other places have access to water, but the water is polluted.

Activity 12: Asking Questions
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. How many books have you written?
2. What subjects have you taught?
3. When did you move to the U.S.?
4. What short stories have you written?
5. Why did you study in Haiti after your parents moved to the U.S.?
6. What did you do with your free time?

Activity 13: Using Different Verb Forms
1. What goals have you set for your career?
2. What did you like best about your previous job?
3. What are your major strengths? Your major weaknesses?
4. How did you get your last job?
5. What do you do with your free time?
6. What has been your biggest professional achievement?
7. Describe the best boss you have had in your professional career.
8. Have you ever worked for a difficult person?
B: No, but we've only been looking for a few days.
9. How will the academic program and course work you have taken benefit your career?
B: It's been getting better but it's still bothering me.
10. Where do you hope to be professionally in five years?
B: They've been talking about going to visit my brother, but they haven't decided yet.

Activity 16: Using the Present Perfect or Present Perfect Progressive
1. A: Where have you been?
B: At the gym. Why?
A: I've been trying to reach you for the last 20 minutes.
B: Sorry, I turned my phone off.
2. A: Where have you been?
B: In the kitchen.
A: What have you been doing all day?
B: I've been preparing dinner.

Activity 15: Forming the Present Perfect Progressive

Students will underline the time expressions in the Think about it activity.

1. A: When do you want dinner?
B: Not for a while. I've been eating all day.
2. A: What have you been doing all day?
B: Not much. What about you?
3. A: Somebody's been using my computer.
B: How do you know?
A: It was off when I left this morning but now it's on.
4. A: Want something to drink?
B: I'd love a cup of coffee.
A: I thought you didn't drink coffee.
B: Oh, come on. I've been drinking coffee for years.
5. A: Have you ever heard of the movie director Sam Giorgio?
B: Of course. I've known him for years. How do you know him?
6. A: Have you seen the remote? I can't find it anywhere.
B: I think it's on the floor next to the couch.
7. A: Are you having a good time?
B: Absolutely. I haven't had so much fun in years.
8. A: Are you going out with us this weekend?
B: Of course. I've been looking forward to it all week.
9. A: What do you think of this music?
B: I don't know. It's OK, I guess. I've just never liked jazz.
10. A: Aren't you finished yet?
B: Be patient. I've been working on it for an hour.
11. A: Did you know that your doorbell isn't working?
B: Be patient. I've been working on it for an hour.
12. A: Do your parents know where they are going on vacation?
B: Not long. My class just started a week ago. What about you?
A: My class hasn't started yet.
13. A: I hear you won your last three races.
B: Yeah, I've been on a lucky streak lately.
14. A: Have you decided what you are going to do next year?
B: Yeah. My parents have finally agreed to let me study overseas.

Think about It
The speaker is complaining or annoyed in conversations 1, 2, 3, 6, 9, 10, and 11.

Activity 17: Present Perfect or Present Perfect Progressive
1. a. I've drunk four cups of coffee since I got up this morning. I shouldn't drink any more.
   b. I've been drinking coffee since I got up this morning. Maybe that's why I can't sit still.
2. a. I've been reading Call of the Wild for a few days. I just can't put it down.
   b. I've read Call of the Wild twice. I highly recommend it.
3. a. We've gone to the gym several times this week, so we're going to take tomorrow off.
b. We've been going to the gym since January, and we already feel a lot better.
4. a. She's already yelled at them twice today for making too much noise. I hope they behave now.
b. She's been yelling at them all day. It's really irritating.
5. a. I've talked to Toshi several times this week, but he still doesn't want to come.
b. I've been talking to friends about taking a trip to Istanbul this summer.
6. a. I hope Hassan's OK. He's gotten sick several times this winter.
b. I can tell winter is coming. The nights have been getting colder and colder.
7. a. My brother thinks that I've been using his phone all week, but it's not true.
b. If you need help with your new phone, I think Carlos has used one a few times.
8. a. I've asked you to clean your room three times this week. I'm not going to ask you again.
b. I've been asking you to clean your room all week. Could you please just do it?
9. a. You don't need to cook anything. I've made dinner already.
b. I've been making phone calls all day, so now I have a bad headache.
10. a. I've tried several times to fix this computer, but it still won't work.
b. Why didn't you answer your phone? I've been trying to call you all morning.

Activity 18: Using the Past Perfect

1. We were a family who had come from nothing, and now we had respect from French people of all sorts.
2. My grandmother wanted to be a music teacher herself, and so she steered my mother into that profession.
3. My mother had wanted to be an opera star or even a movie star...but the [birth] of a baby put an end to that.
4. By the time I was 15, my mother had turned me into a real clotheshorse.
5. My mother had been a country and western singer, but when she moved out to Hollywood she found it very difficult to get work, so when I was born they put me into dance classes and singing classes as soon as I could walk, actually.
6. My mother had always taught me to write about my feelings instead of sharing really personal things with others, so I spent many evenings writing in my diary, eating everything in the kitchen and waiting for Mr. Wrong to call.
7. I had traveled 10 states and played over 50 cities by the time I was 4.
8. Interestingly enough, I met and had classes from several professors that my father had had many years before.
9. My mother was a very literate person who had educated herself.
10. Music was around in my family in two ways. My mother would occasionally sing to me, but I was mostly stimulated by the classical music my father had left behind.

Think about It
The underlined verbs are all in the past perfect.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. By the time I was 15, I had visited every state on the West Coast.
2. I had learned to sing by the time I was 4.

Activity 19: Using the Past Perfect with Because and As Though
1. His clothes were wet because he had fallen in the river.
2. She quit her job because her boss had criticized her.
3. He didn't call me because he had lost my phone number.
4. I felt sick last night because I had eaten too much at dinner.
5. He was ashamed because he had been rude to his parents.
6. He was angry because she had insulted him.
7. His back hurt so much he felt as though a car had run over him.
8. The house looked as though it had been empty for years.
9. She was breathless as though she had run there.
10. The child cried out as though she had hurt herself.

Activity 20: Sentences with When

1. She called me after I left the house.
   a. When she called me, I had already left the house.
2. After 20 minutes went by, we finally got a table at the restaurant.
   b. When we finally got a table at the restaurant, 20 minutes had gone by.
3. The sun came up before we did all our work.
   c. The sun had come up when we did all our work.
4. I still have the watch my father gave me before I left home.
   d. I still have the watch my father had given me when I left home.
5. After the smoke had cleared, we saw the house in the distance.
   e. When the smoke had cleared, we saw the house in the distance.
6. After my cousin got her PhD, she got a job in the high-tech industry.
   f. When my cousin had gotten her PhD, she got a job in the high-tech industry.
7. Everyone got out of the bus before it burst into flames.
   g. Everyone had gotten out of the bus when it burst into flames.
8. After the last person left, we went inside and had lunch.
   h. After the last person had left, we went inside and had lunch.
9. After the plane landed, the person next to me suddenly started laughing.
   i. When the plane had landed, the person next to me suddenly started laughing.

Activity 21: Simple Past or Past Perfect?
Patsy Cline, born Virginia Patterson Hensley, recorded her first big hit in 1957. It was called “Walkin' After Midnight” and it became No. 2 on the list of country music hit recordings and No. 16 on the list of most popular music.

Patsy had worked for many years to make that first successful record. She began singing when she was a young girl in her hometown of Winchester, Virginia. Patsy sang anywhere she could. If there was a stage, she tried to sing there. She sang at weddings, dances, restaurants, and other public places. She earned $8 a night. Her friends and family said she worked hard to improve her singing and make a successful record.
In 1947, she was asked if she could perform on a local radio show. People loved her performance, and the radio station soon invited her back to perform again. Patsy continued to perform and in 1954 she won a country music competition near her home. She was 22 years old. She was then invited to sing on a country music TV show in Washington, D.C. She also performed on radio shows in Virginia and recorded some records.

Patsy Cline appeared on a national television show in New York City. It was on this show in 1957 that millions of people first heard her sing. She sang a song she had recently recorded called “Walkin’ After Midnight.” This performance helped make her career a major success. Patsy continued to record more songs, and soon made another major hit called “I Fall to Pieces.”

By 1957, Patsy Cline had won a country music competition near her hometown. Ten years after her death, she became the first female musician elected to the Country Music Hall of Fame.

Think about it

1. a.  She recorded her first big hit.
   - She worked hard for many years to make a successful record.
   - She appeared on a national television show.
   - She recorded the song “Walkin’ After Midnight.”
   - She recorded the song “I Fall to Pieces.”
   - She learned to control the sound and feelings in her songs.
   - She had accomplished her whole career by the time she was 30 years old.

2. She had accomplished her whole career by the time she was 30 years old.

Write about it

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. By 1957, Patsy Cline had won a country music competition.
2. In 1957, she appeared on national television.
3. By 1963, she had helped many young musicians become important stars.
4. In 1963, she was elected to the Country Music Hall of Fame.

Activity 22: Using the Past Perfect Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ongoing</th>
<th>Repeated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. After I had been working at the bank for a few years, I decided I wanted a more interesting job.</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Before I moved to Australia, I had been teaching myself English.</td>
<td>❑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I had been drawing pictures the whole time I was in Italy, so when I returned home, my parents were very pleased.</td>
<td>❑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about it

Had shows the “perfect” meaning. The –ing form shows the “progressive” meaning.

Activity 23: Error Correction

1. My father grew up in the U.S., but his mother had always spoken to him in Spanish when he was a baby.
2. In the story, the main character had lost a lot of money.
3. My parents had never gone abroad, but they wanted their children to see the world.
4. By the 1900s, traveling had become easier because there were better roads.
5. I had been studying English for many years before I came here.
6. I liked to sing when we got together. (no errors)
7. By the time I was born, my parents had been married for three years.
8. I didn’t pass my first exams even though I had studied every night for weeks.
9. My cousin had been living in this country for five years when his father died.
10. I was very lonely when I arrived here because I had left all my friends.

Activity 24: Noticing Future Perfect Forms

Answers to predictions will vary.
1. the population of the world will have reached 10 billion.
2. the world will have become paperless.
3. we will have found a cure for all cancers.
4. we will have stopped using coal, oil, and gas for energy.
5. we will have had another world war.
6. the number of fish in the oceans will have decreased by a large amount.
7. people will have lived on Mars for several years.
8. the world will have become a better place.

Think about it

Answers will vary.

Activity 25: Using Future Perfect Forms

1. By 18 months, most children will have learned 5 to 20 words—mostly nouns. By 24 months, the vocabulary of most children will have expanded to between 150 and 300 words.
2. In a 65-year lifespan, the average person will have spent 9 years watching television.
3. By the age of 20, most people will have played video games for 10,000 hours.
4. The average person will have listened to 10,500 hours of music during his or her teen years.
5. The average person will have worked for 91,250 hours by the end of his or her life.
6. By the time you stop working, you will have had ten different jobs.
7. By the time you retire, you will have changed careers three to five times.
8. By the age of 65, the average person will have seen 2 million television commercials.
9. By age 70, the average person will have walked a distance equal to four times around the world.
10. By the end of his or her life, the average person will have taken 7,163 baths.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. The average person probably won’t have eaten a lot of junk food by age 65.
2. The average person probably won’t have traveled into space.
3. The average person probably won’t have heard a lot of music by age 65.
4. The average person will probably have spent a lot of time reading and writing.
5. The average person probably won’t have visited all the continents.

Activity 26: Starting a Conversation
1. Have you been keeping busy?
2. Have you seen any good movies recently?
3. How long have you lived here?
4. Have you read any good books lately?
5. Have you heard any good music recently?
6. Have you eaten at any good restaurants recently?
7. Have you taken any trips this year?

Activity 27: Omitting Have and Has in Conversation
1. A: You always lived here? (Have you always lived here?)
   B: No, I lived in California before this.
2. A: How long you been here? (How long have you been here?)
   B: Not long. Just a few minutes.
3. A: You been OK? (Have you been OK?)
   B: Yeah, not bad.
4. A: How are you?
   B: Never been better. (I’ve never been better.)
5. A: You been here before? (Have you been here before?)
   B: No. Have you?
6. A: Where you been? (Where have you been?)
   B: At the library.
7. A: You been outside yet? (Have you been outside yet?)
   B: No, why?
   A: It snowed last night.
8. A: Seen any good movies lately? (Have you seen any good movies lately?)
   B: No, I haven’t. What about you?
   A: No, I haven’t either.
9. A: You heard about Amanda? (Have you heard about Amanda?)
   B: No, what?
   A: She’s going to marry some guy named Joe.
   B: She known him long? (Has she known him long?)
   A: Oh, I don’t know. A year or so.
10. A: Anyone spoken to James recently? (Has anyone spoken to James recently?)
    B: No, why?
    A: I think he has a surprise for all of you.

Activity 28: Dictation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present perfect of get</th>
<th>Necessity</th>
<th>Possession</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. She’s gotten sick again.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. She’s got a new car.</td>
<td></td>
<td>☑</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I’ve gotten better at this.</td>
<td></td>
<td>☑</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I’ve got a better one.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. He’s gotten good at it.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. He’s gotten into trouble again.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. They’ve got another house.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. We’ve got to go.</td>
<td></td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 29: Supporting General Statements
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. GENERAL STATEMENT: Computers have made life easier.
   EXAMPLE 1: You can go shopping without ever leaving your home.
   Detail 1: I now buy most of my books online instead of at a bookstore.
   Detail 2: Last year I bought most of my holiday gifts online.
   Detail 3: Some people buy their groceries online. I haven’t tried this yet, but it would save me a lot of time.
   EXAMPLE 2: You can communicate with your friends more easily.
   Detail 1: I can send email to communicate with my friends abroad.
   Detail 2: People can also use Skype instead of the phone.
   Detail 3: Social networks like Facebook have made communication easier as well.

2. GENERAL STATEMENT: The automobile has created serious problems.
   EXAMPLE 1: Automobiles pollute the environment.
   Detail 1: Carbon dioxide is one of the causes of climate change.
   Detail 2: Cars are dependent on gasoline and oil, and these can pollute the environment.
   Detail 3: Many parts of automobiles cannot be recycled.
   EXAMPLE 2: The ways that people drive can also be dangerous.
   Detail 1: Speeding is a major cause of accidents.
   Detail 2: Texting while driving can cause problems.
   Detail 3: “Road rage” (when people get angry while driving) is a big problem in cities where there is a lot of traffic.

3. GENERAL STATEMENT: Telephones and email have made communication between people less personal.
   EXAMPLE 1: Telephones allow people to communicate without seeing each other.
   Detail 1: They can communicate over long distances, so they don’t have to be close to each other.
   Detail 2: When people are busy, it can be hard to find time to have a phone conversation.
Detail 3: Even people who live close to each other don't see each other as often when they can communicate by telephone.

EXAMPLE 2: Email also allows people to communicate without seeing each other.

Detail 1: Emotions are hard to convey over email.

Detail 2: Email does not contain information about voice tone.

Detail 3: Email language, especially between co-workers or people who don't know each other well, can be very formal.

Write about It
The automobile has created serious problems. For example, automobiles pollute the environment. They produce carbon dioxide, which is one of the causes of climate change. Also, cars are dependent on gasoline and oil, and these can pollute the environment. And many parts of automobiles cannot be recycled.

The ways that people drive can also be dangerous. Speeding is a major cause of accidents. Texting while driving can cause problems because people aren't paying attention to the road. Also, “road rage” (when people get angry while driving) is a big problem in cities where there is a lot of traffic.

Activity 30: Answering Essay Questions
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. My attitudes have changed significantly in the last few years. OR Over the past five years, I have lived in three different countries. This experience has changed the way I think about my own country.

2. The automobile has been harmful to our society in many ways. OR There are many ways in which the automobile has been detrimental to our society.

3. I believe that television has made our society a nation of people who would rather watch than do. OR I disagree that our society is a nation of people who would rather watch television than do things in the real world.

4. I believe that the book has been the most important invention in our civilization. OR There are many inventions that have had significant effect on civilization, but I think the book has been the most important.

5. I believe that computers have made our lives easier in some ways but more complicated in others. OR Computers have made our lives easier, but they have also made our lives more complicated.

6. Advertising has had a significant influence on the way my friends and I make decisions about products we buy. OR I don’t think my friends and I have been significantly influenced by advertising.

7. Information technology has changed our working lives for the better over the last 10 years. OR There are many ways—both good and bad—that information technology has changed people’s working lives over the last 10 years.

QUESTIONS
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

a. It’s a good idea to begin the essay response using the same form of the verb because often the question wants us to connect something that happened in the past to present events or to show how something has changed.

b. No, you don’t always need to do this. For example, it’s possible to use the simple present in a response to a question that uses the present perfect.

Activity 31: Analyzing Verb Choices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Does Vitamin C Help Fight the Common Cold?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A large review of medical trials has concluded that Vitamin C is largely ineffective in the prevention and treatment of the common cold. In 30 trials with 11,350 participants who took at least 200 milligrams of vitamin C a day, researchers found that vitamin C did not reduce the occurrence of the common cold. Vitamin C did slightly reduce the duration and severity of cold symptoms, but the effect was very small.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Humans Have Been Making Art for a Lot Longer Than We Thought</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A new study has revealed that Spain’s El Castillo Cave contains the oldest known cave paintings in Europe, with a handprint dating back 37,300 years. Instead of testing the paint’s age, a team of British and Spanish researchers measured the age of the stone that had formed around the drawings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scientists Able to Study Atmosphere of Planet Outside Our Solar System</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scientists have detailed the atmosphere of a planet outside our solar system. The team, based in Chile, was able to measure the amount of carbon monoxide on Tau Bootis b—one of the first “exoplanets” discovered back in 1996. They were able to measure the atmosphere without relying on a “transit” of the planet—where it passes in front of its star. That is important as, up to now, astronomers and scientists have had to rely on transits to measure the atmosphere.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 32: Providing Background Information
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. Her grandfather was a great businessman. He had started his own business at age 24, and he had helped his brothers start their own businesses.

2. The athletes were in great shape when they got to the competition. They had spent years preparing and practicing for the physical demands they would be facing.

3. He was nervous when he moved here by himself. He hadn’t been able to travel here before he moved, so he didn’t know anyone.

4. When he was a young man, he witnessed something that changed his life. He had gone to see a movie that he really enjoyed, so he decided to go into the film industry.

5. She was tired, but her first days in this new country were very exciting. She had never been outside of her village, so she was excited to see a big city.

6. It was a real accomplishment when her mother finally graduated from college. She and her mother had worked very hard to make this dream possible.
7. When she was a child, her father didn't know how to act around her. He was an only child, so he had spent most of his time alone when he was growing up.

8. When he came to this country, he couldn't get a job. He had never studied English, so he couldn't fill out the job applications.

Wrap-Up

A
Answers will vary.

B
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Opinion: My sister Elena is very smart.
Examples:
1. She has several academic degrees.
2. She has been a teacher for ten years.
3. She graduated from college at the top of her class.

C
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Over the past five years I have lived in three different countries. This experience has changed the way I think about my own country. For example, I think we need better public transportation. I had never ridden a subway or a bus in my country. Instead, we walked or rode our bikes when we needed to go somewhere.

The health care in my country is pretty good. I've always been healthy, but the few times I was sick I got a doctor's appointment very quickly. Since I've lived in this country, I've had to wait to see a doctor.

I miss the food in my country. I've been eating too much fast food lately. When I was growing up, we never ate fast food. My mother spent most of the day cooking our main meal. She's a very good cook!

D
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Job: a cook on a sailboat
Skills/Experience: has experience on sailboats, likes to cook, has cooked for large groups of people
Interview Questions: Have you ever been on a sailboat? Do you like to cook? Have you ever cooked in a very small kitchen? Have you ever cooked for a large group of people?
Unit 3

Warm-Up

A
1. A man should look for what is, and not for what he thinks should be.  
f
2. You must be the change you wish to see in the world.  
a
3. If you want to understand today, you have to search yesterday.  
g
4. An inch of time is an inch of gold, but you cannot buy that inch of time with an inch of gold.  
e
5. No one would have crossed the ocean if he could have gotten off the ship in a storm.  
b
6. While we may not be able to control all that happens to us, we can control what happens inside us.  
d
7. The less one has to do, the less time one finds to do it in.  
c

B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>True</th>
<th>False</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Simple modals are followed by the base form of the verb.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. A simple modal changes form after different subjects.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. A phrasal modal changes form after different subjects.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. We can place a simple modal next to a phrasal modal in a sentence.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Some simple modals and phrasal modals have similar meanings.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C
modal: should not

Activity 1: Identifying Simple Modals in a Passage
At many universities, students can choose from dozens of majors and minors. Nowadays, when they are making that important decision, students often focus on the subjects that can provide the best careers because they want to be sure they have jobs after they graduate. But some experts say that students should think about doing something they love instead. Research has shown that students may not do well at studies they don't care about. Before you choose a major, ask yourself: Would you really enjoy doing this as a career? If you don't have a strong interest in the topic, you might want to consider a different choice. For the moment, it may not be clear where your interest will lead you, but passion inspires hard work, which often leads to success.

Activity 2: Identifying Speakers' Attitudes
1. “They’ll bring the potato salad.”  
e
2. “He might not remember how to get here.”  
b
3. “I have to call my sister tonight.”  
d
4. “You can stay out until 11 p.m.”  
h
5. “You might want to try a different approach.”  
f
6. “You shouldn’t eat so much sugar.”  
a
7. “She can do advanced mathematics.”  
g
8. “Could you please send me a copy of that?”  
c

Activity 3: Identifying Time References

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present/General time</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. A: Are you calling the store?  
B: Yes, but they're not answering.  
They must be closed. | ✓      |    |
| 2. A: Where are you going on vacation?  
B: We might go to Hawaii. |    | ✓   |
| 3. A: Seems as if Alex always eats pizza for lunch.  
B: He must really like it. | ✓     |    |
| 4. A: I can’t decide which one to buy.  
B: You should get the blue one. |    | ✓   |
| 5. A: We won’t be able to get reservations this late.  
B: Let’s go tomorrow, then. |    | ✓   |
| 6. A: People shouldn’t be so quick to judge each other.  
B: That’s true. |    | ✓   |
| 7. A: Is he here? I don’t hear any noise from his room.  
B: He might be sleeping. | ✓     |    |
| 8. A: The company may have to change its hiring policies.  
B: I hope so. We’ll see what happens. |    | ✓   |
| 9. A: What does the handbook say?  
B: It says, “Employees must report any problems to the proper authorities.” | ✓     |    |
| 10. A: You can come over after lunch if you want to.  
B: Great! I’ll see you then. |    | ✓   |
| 11. A: Did you hear that Sheila quit yesterday?  
B: Wow, I can’t believe that. I thought she liked it here. | ✓     |    |
| 12. A: How does your brother feel? Any better?  
B: Yeah, actually, I think he may be feeling pretty good. He went to work today. | ✓     |    |

Activity 5: Error Correction
1. You must think about that a little more carefully.  
2. Sal should call the office in the morning.  
3. When should I place the order?  
4. They can see both sides of the argument.  
5. I think the corporations should try a little harder to solve this problem.  
6. Passengers must not stand near the doors when they are opening and closing.
7. Are students supposed to eat and drink in the library?
8. That color might not be the best choice for you.
9. When can we take another break?
10. If they practice, they might be a little better next time.

Activity 6: Forming Negatives and Questions
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I can’t come over tonight.
2. Could we wait here?
3. Will I be able to finish later?
4. The plan won’t work.
5. I may not be ready for the test.
6. Can you eat more and lose weight?
7. We shouldn’t go out tonight.
8. Could we talk now?

Activity 7: Making Statements with Will
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Students will write O, P, or G for each conversation in the Think about It activity.
1. A: Can you bring something for the potluck dinner?
   B: Sure. I’ll make a salad. (G)
2. A: Amal is late for dinner. I wonder where he is.
   B: I don’t know. I’ll give him a call. (O)
3. A: How will I know what time to show up?
   B: Don’t worry. I’ll tell you. (P)
4. A: Bye! It was nice seeing you again.
   B: You too! I’ll see you later! (G)
5. A: Please don’t tell anyone I said this.
   B: I promise. I’ll keep your secret. (P)
6. A: How are you going to find a job?
   B: Well, I’ll look online, and then I’ll make some calls. (G)
7. A: I don’t think Sara can do this alone.
   B: That’s OK. I’ll help her. (G)
8. A: I don’t have time to make all those copies.
   B: I have time. I’ll do them for you. (O)
   B: I’ll be fine. I promise. (P)

Activity 8: Using Will to State Intentions
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I will describe how the virus spreads in the following section. (biology)
2. I will explore the effects of an unhealthy diet in depth. (nutrition)
3. I will address the government’s policies below. (political science)
4. I will discuss the important points of the novel throughout this essay. (English literature)
5. I will explore the process of cell division in this paper. (biology)
6. I will refer to the relationship between the two countries throughout this essay. (political science)
7. I will outline the research on carbohydrates in the following section. (nutrition)
8. I will focus on two of Shakespeare’s sonnets in depth. (English literature)

Activity 9: Distinguishing Will from Would
1. A: Your essay was due today.
   B: I know. I’ll do it tomorrow, when I have time.
2. A: You need to work on your essay.
   B: I know. I’d do it today, but I don’t have time.
3. A: Tomas couldn’t make it?
   B: No, I’m sorry. He’d be here if he could.
4. A: I can’t decide what to order.
   B: I’ll/I’d have the chicken. That looks delicious.
5. A: Where is Alexander?
   B: He’ll be here any minute.
6. A: I have no interest in that movie.
   B: Really? I’d love to see it.
7. A: Where are the extra blankets?
   B: Hmm. Ask Rafa. He’ll know.
8. A: I’m sorry we’re out of time.
   B: Me too. I’d stay longer if I could.

Think about It
Would is a better choice for conversations 2, 3, and 8, which are counterfactual.

Activity 10: Using Would to Describe Possible Results
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposals for new laws</th>
<th>In favor</th>
<th>Against</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Make cigarettes illegal.</td>
<td>Stores would not sell cigarettes, so people would smoke less.</td>
<td>Some people would smoke anyway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Require all citizens to vote.</td>
<td>Government would represent all citizens.</td>
<td>It would be difficult to force people to vote if they don’t want to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Don’t allow cars in downtown areas.</td>
<td>Walking downtown would be better for people’s health.</td>
<td>We would need to make exceptions for people who can’t walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Allow advertising on school websites.</td>
<td>Schools would make money to spend on their students.</td>
<td>Companies would want to control how that money is spent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Increase taxes on gasoline.</td>
<td>People would not buy as much gas, which is better for the environment.</td>
<td>Gas would be very expensive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Stop the sale of candy at children’s schools.</td>
<td>Children would not eat as much sugar, which is better for their health.</td>
<td>Parents would still allow their children to bring candy to school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Spend public money on a high-speed railway.</td>
<td>It would make traveling between two cities easier.</td>
<td>It would cost a lot of the government’s money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Raise the minimum wage.</td>
<td>People would be able to live better on higher wages.</td>
<td>The cost of things like food and clothing would go up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 11: Using Counterfactual Would Have
1. A: You know, I was in Toronto last weekend.
   B: I didn’t know you were in town! I would have invited you over for dinner.
2. A: We missed you at the concert last night.
   B: I would have gone, but I had a lot of homework.
3. A: I didn’t see you in class yesterday.
   B: I know. I would have come, but I didn’t hear my alarm go off.
4. A: Selena was here yesterday.
   B: Oh, I didn’t know that. I would have called her.
5. A: How’d you do on the test?
   B: Not too well. I would have studied more, but I left my book in the library.
6. A: I walked all the way over here.
   B: Why didn't you call me? I would have picked you up!
7. A: We're out of apples.
   B: Oh, I didn't know. I would have bought some when I was at the store.
8. A: Whew! That was hard!
   B: Why didn't you tell me? I would have helped you.

Activity 12: Using Will, Would, or Would Have

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. A: Sorry I'm late. I would have called you, but my phone is dead.
   B: That's OK.
2. A: So what are you getting?
   B: I think I'll have the garden salad.
3. A: This place is kind of expensive.
   B: Don't worry. I'll pay for this.
4. A: Are you leaving already?
   B: I'd stay, but I have a class in 15 minutes.
5. A: This place is fantastic.
   B: Yeah, I didn't know about it or I would have eaten here before.
6. A: Could you excuse me for a moment? I'll be right back.
   B: Of course.
7. A: So what did you think of this place?
   B: It was great. I will absolutely come back again.
   B: I'd like some pie, but I don't have time.

Think about it

Would have was the best choice for conversations 1 and 5, which are all past counterfactual. Would is the best choice for sentences 4 and 8, which are both present counterfactual. Sentences 2, 3, 6, and 7 all express intent, so will is the best choice.

Activity 13: Using Can for Possibility

Answers will vary in paragraph 2.

We all want to be healthy and to look good, and we all know that exercise and a healthy diet are essential. But specific advice about food and nutrition can be overwhelming at times. Research shows that high-fat foods like red meat can raise cholesterol, which leads to heart disease. And refined carbohydrates, like white flour and white rice, can raise blood sugar levels. Many foods, like milk, nuts, eggs, and fish, can cause serious allergies.

In addition to these more serious problems, some people think that foods like onions, garlic, and cabbage can give you bad breath. Others believe that eating meat and refined carbohydrates can lead to bad body odor. Tomatoes, citrus fruits, and chocolate can make your stomach hurt. Coffee can keep you awake, but dairy products and bananas can make you sleepy. If you drink soda and eat candy, you can damage your teeth.

Write about it

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Drinking plenty of water can help relieve headaches.
Drinking plenty of water can help prevent dehydration.
Eating a lot of vegetables can help your digestive system.
Eating a lot of vegetables can keep you healthy.
Exercising every day can increase your energy level.
Exercising every day can help you maintain a healthy weight.

Activity 14: Using Counterfactual Could Have

1. We could have seen the movie last night, but we weren't in the mood.
2. It was a beautiful day, so we could have taken a walk on the beach.
3. I don't know where my parents are, but they couldn't have gone very far.
4. I couldn't have helped you last weekend. I wasn't in town.
5. I could have gone to the office, but I decided to stay home. I just wasn't feeling well.
6. We couldn't have played soccer today. We just didn't have time.
7. I didn't know the restaurant was going to be crowded. We could have eaten at home instead.
8. The concert was fantastic. I could have listened to them for another hour.
9. I could have called Jon, but I didn't think he'd want to come with us.
10. Thank you for all your help. I couldn't have done this without you.

Write about it

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

I could have gone to the bookstore, but I didn't have any money.
I could have gone to the party, but I didn't have a ride.

Activity 15: Present Possibility vs. Past Possibility

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present/future possibility</th>
<th>Past counterfactual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A fall from that height could result in a broken arm.</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>He could have hurt himself.</td>
<td>□</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>We could get a raise this year.</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>The new policies could have a good effect on our neighborhood.</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>They say it could rain.</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>He could have been a very important man.</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>You really could have told me about this before.</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>She could take the day off to relax.</td>
<td>☒</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about it

2. He didn't hurt himself.
6. He didn't become a very important man.
7. You didn't tell me about this before.

Write about it

The meaning changes to indicate that these things didn't actually happen.
1. A fall from that height could have resulted in a broken arm.
3. We could have gotten a raise this year.
4. The new policies could have had a good effect on our neighborhood.
5. They say it could have rained.
8. She could have taken the day off to relax.

Activity 16: Error Correction

1. I'm so tired that I could fall asleep right now.
2. It's too bad he didn't try a little harder yesterday. He could have won that race.
3. My brother could have gotten a job anywhere after he graduated.
4. I would buy tickets, but I just can't afford them. OR I would have bought tickets, but I just couldn't afford them.
5. There is a lot left to do. This job could take seven or eight more days.
6. The team could have gone to the finals this year, but Rodriguez broke his leg.
7. The neighbors could move out later this year. (no errors)
8. In many areas around the world, earthquakes can cause major damage.

**Activity 17:** Identifying Degrees of Certainty

1. A: Why haven't they gotten here yet?
   B: They may not know about the time change.
   OR
   They must not know about the time change.
2. A: I wonder if he's coming to the lecture.
   B: He'll come.
3. A: Do you think we'll get a raise next year?
   B: We could.

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

- **Expressing Degrees of Certainty**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity 20: Identifying Time Frames</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. We might see more extreme weather in the coming years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The earth's temperature may have risen too much to stop the effects of climate change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Past human activity must have helped change the climate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Natural weather cycles could also have contributed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. The Arctic ice should continue to melt at the same speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. New energy policies could affect the speed of global warming.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Although the earth is warmer, the weather can be colder in particular areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Climate may be difficult to predict, so scientists have developed complicated models to help them with predictions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Write about It**

All of them could be rewritten using maybe.

**Activity 19:** Writing about Degrees of Certainty

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

- My school might raise tuition rates next year. They are building a new library, so they must need money. The weather will be good tomorrow. That's what the meteorologists are predicting.

- Technology will get better over the next few years. I'm looking forward to seeing the new cell phones! My country should apply to host the Olympics. I think it would be nice to have the Games there. The situation with the environment should improve soon if businesses follow the laws.

**Activity 21:** Degrees of Certainty with Modals

1. I can't find my phone.
   It should be in your bag. I saw you put it there.
2. My phone keeps freezing.
   You might need to update the software.
3. Whose phone is this?
   It must be Tina's.
4. She never answered my text message.
   She may not have gotten it.
5. He's not answering.
   He might have turned off his ringer.
6. I forgot to call you!
   It's OK. You couldn't have anyway. I left my phone at home.
7. My battery is almost dead.
   You must have forgotten to charge it.
8. I must have left her five messages!
   She may not check her voicemail.
Think about It

Modal refers to present time: b, f, g, and h
Modal refers to past time: a, c, d, and e

Activity 23: Identifying Meanings of Could
1. I guess I didn’t study enough. I could have passed that test easily. E
2. They say it could snow tomorrow. A
3. I don’t see the dictionary. Malai could have taken it to school. F
4. He could lift a hundred pounds easily when he was younger. D
5. I’m not sure who ate the cookies. It could have been my brother. F
6. Don’t eat that. It could be spoiled. A
7. I could start working tomorrow. A
8. She could have a lot of money in the bank, but I doubt it. B
9. In those days, you could travel many miles without seeing a city. D
10. She’s exhausted. She couldn’t have worked any harder last night. G
11. She couldn’t have written that. That’s not even her handwriting. G
12. That looks like my sister, but it couldn’t be her. She doesn’t even live in this town. C
13. We really got lucky. That accident could have caused a lot of problems. E
14. He couldn’t have any money left now. He spent a fortune last night! C

Activity 24: Using Could/Could Have

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. A: I wonder why Marcos is so happy today. B: He could have gotten some good news.
2. A: What should we do tomorrow? B: We could go to the new museum.
3. A: Who is that man? B: He could be Maggie’s brother.
4. A: Did you go home last weekend? B: I could have gone home, but I didn’t.
5. A: What were you good at when you were a kid? B: I could play soccer really well.
6. A: Is that woman a doctor? B: She could be. I don’t know.
8. A: What was that noise? B: It could have been my cats.

Activity 25: Error Correction
1. They might have gone to the celebration last night, but I didn’t see them there.
2. He could go to work tomorrow. OR He could have gone to work today. He’s not very sick at all.
3. I don’t know where your keys are. They might be in the kitchen.
4. It’s a good thing she raised so much money. Otherwise, she could have lost the election.
5. It’s 9 a.m. The store could be open, but I’m not sure.
6. This book is torn. The baby could have done it. He was looking at it this morning.
7. We saw someone who looked like you on Friday, but we knew it couldn’t be you.
8. They may not have had enough time to finish yesterday.

Activity 26: Giving and Requesting Advice
1. Advisor: You need to take Writing for Business and Economics 101.
   Student: Which one should I take first?
2. Student: When should I apply for an internship?
   Advisor: You really should do that in your junior year.
3. Clerk: You should look at our accessories table. Everything is on sale.
   Customer: That’s OK. I’ll just take this.
4. Customer: Where should I go to return an item?
   Clerk: You can do that at the register.
5. Customer: Where should I return this item?
   CSA: I can help you with that.
6. Customer: What number should I call for technical service?
   CSA: I’ll transfer you.
7. Customer: What documents should I bring?
   Teller: You just need your ID and your account number.
8. Teller: We’ll stop the check, but you should contact the merchant.
   Customer: OK. I’ll do that.
9. Customer: How often should I change the oil?
   Repairperson: Every three months.
     Customer: I’ll keep that in mind.

Write about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. How many classes should I take this summer?
2. Where should I look for men’s shoes?
3. Who should I ask about changing my account options?
4. What should I put in a deposit box?
5. How long should the rinse cycle take?

Activity 27: Expressing Opinions with Should or Ought To

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Colleges ought to provide students with a general education and teach them a variety of skills. They shouldn’t just focus on career preparation.
2. Parents shouldn’t spoil their children. They ought to teach their children responsibility.
3. The restaurant should make sure that its customer service is very good. It shouldn’t serve bad food.
4. Teachers ought to vary the activities in class. They shouldn’t give too much homework.
5. People ought to do interesting things to meet new friends.
6. People ought to sign up for social media sites to keep in touch with old friends. They shouldn’t forget to say hello every once in a while.
7. Cities should make sure that they are clean and crime-free.
8. Airlines should put more space between the seats. They shouldn’t try to fit as many people as possible inside the plane.
9. People should do the things they enjoy. They shouldn’t seek out people who are mean to them.
10. People in their twenties should travel and learn about the world. They shouldn’t be in a rush to settle down.

Activity 28: Using Had Better

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. A: It looks like it’s going to rain. B: We’d better get inside.
2. A: What did your father say?
   B: He said I’d better get a job soon.
3. A: Tom’s boss is pretty mad at him right now.
   B: Tom had better get his work done!
4. A: Marta got sick at that restaurant.
   B: We’d better not go there, then!
5. A: It looks like the store is going to close soon.
   B: We’d better finish our shopping quickly.
6. A: That might be my boss calling.
   B: You’d better answer the phone.
7. A: The president of my bank was just caught in a big scandal.
   B: You’d better change banks, then.
   B: You’d better go shopping before the stores close!

Activity 29: Expressing Regret with Shouldn’t Have
1. He shouldn’t have stayed up so late. He should have turned off the TV earlier.
2. She should have read the directions. She shouldn’t have turned in the test without checking it first.
3. She should have worked on her application earlier. She shouldn’t have planned to do the application so late.
4. She should have made an effort to stay in touch. She shouldn’t have lost track of where her friend was.
5. He should have accepted the job offer. He shouldn’t have assumed that the company would do badly.
6. She should have written down the address. She shouldn’t have assumed that she would remember it.
7. She should have waited to buy her TV. She shouldn’t have been impatient.
8. He shouldn’t have left his laptop on the table. He should have checked his bag before he left.

Activity 30: Using Past and Present Advisability with Should
1. A: You forgot to buy bananas.
   B: Darn! I should have made a list before I went to the store.
2. A: Are you going shopping?
   B: Yeah, in a few minutes. I should make a list first, though.
3. A: I’m so glad we finally talked.
   B: Me too. We should have done this earlier.
4. A: Ken didn’t look very happy this morning.
   B: I know. Maybe I shouldn’t have told him about the layoffs.
5. A: You don’t look very well.
   B: I’m not. I shouldn’t have eaten that fish.
6. A: My interview is tomorrow. I’m so nervous!
   B: You shouldn’t worry so much. You’ll do fine.
7. A: Sounds as if you guys had a lot of fun.
   B: We did. You really should have come with us.
8. A: We’re not going to get there on time.
   B: I know, I know. We should have left earlier.

Activity 32: Identifying Uses of Should and Should Have
1. You’re under a lot of stress. You should relax and take some time for yourself.
   A
2. I’m sorry we missed the beginning of the show. We should have come earlier.
   D
3. What have you been doing all day? You should be finished with your work by now!
   B
4. Try SuperMart. They should have the brand you’re looking for.
   They have a huge selection.
   C
5. I’ve been saving all year. I should have more money than this!
   B
6. You should have seen the moon last night. It was beautiful.
   D
7. She should call her father. I think he’s lonely.
   A
8. Just wait here, please. He should be available in a couple of minutes.
   C

Activity 34: Using Could Have, Would Have, and Should Have
1. Marcia should have come to dinner with us.
2. She couldn’t have saved enough money.
3. I would have gone with you.
4. You could have gone out for the team.
5. They wouldn’t have been ready.
6. He shouldn’t have said that.
7. She would have liked that.
8. You couldn’t have been surprised.
9. He should have asked me.
10. She wouldn’t have done that.
11. You could have texted me.
12. Carlos would have done it.

Write about It
Answers will vary.

Activity 35: Using Must for Obligation in Writing
1. For this reaction to occur, temperatures must reach 80 degrees.
   e
2. The potatoes must be dry before you put them in the oil.
   a
3. The government must not cut the sales tax on luxury items.
   We need the revenue, and the tax only affects people who can afford it.
   b
4. Hundreds of students must retake the test this year.
   c
5. Students must not use university computers in unlawful ways.
   d
6. The human body must have a good supply of oxygen.
   e
7. The administration must reconsider the campus parking rules.
   c
8. The mayor is terrible and must resign immediately.
   b
9. The cream sauce must not boil or it will be ruined.
   a
10. Undergraduates must pay their full tuition by October 15.
    d

Activity 36: Using Have To
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. A: Did you have to work late last night?
   B: Yeah, I did. Jason never showed up for his shift.
2. A: Where’s Sun-Hee?
   B: She left about an hour ago. She had to go to class.
3. A: What is Carlos so happy about?
   B: He doesn’t have to take the final exam tomorrow because he has an A in the class.
4. A: Does the manager have to work tonight?
   B: Yeah, he does. And he’s not happy about it!
5. A: Thank you. That’s so nice! You didn’t have to get me a present.
   B: I know, but I wanted to.
6. A: I have to open the window. It’s so hot in here.
   B: I wish you wouldn’t. It’s really cold outside.
7. A: I’m so glad I don’t have to take that medicine anymore.
   B: Oh, that’s good. It was making you sick, wasn’t it?
8. A: Emma has been going to the gym a lot lately.
   B: She has to get in shape for the big game.

Think about It
has got to: 6 and 8

Activity 38: Using Be Required To and Be Not Allowed To
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Teachers are not allowed to accept gifts from students.
2. Teachers are required to call a substitute for absences.
3. Chemists are not allowed to eat or drink in the work area.
4. Public service workers are not allowed to shred many documents.
5. Government employees are not allowed to talk about work to people outside the company.
6. Restaurant servers are required to wash their hands before returning to work.
8. The weather was supposed to be sunny, but it's raining.

Activity 39: Using Be Supposed To
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. When I was younger, I was supposed to clean my room, but sometimes I didn't.
2. Recently, I was supposed to go to a meeting, but I didn't because I was sick.
3. I am supposed to shower every day, but sometimes I don't.
4. Tomorrow I am supposed to go to work.
5. My brother was supposed to help me move, but he had to work at the last minute.
6. My teacher is supposed to send me the homework, but I haven't seen it yet.
7. My roommates were supposed to do the dishes, but they're still in the sink.
8. The weather was supposed to be sunny, but it's raining.

Activity 40: Expressing Prohibition and Obligation
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. You must try your best to succeed.
2. Students are required to bring all materials to every class.
3. You must not get discouraged if you fall behind.
4. You are supposed to make wise decisions about how to spend your time.
5. You must believe in yourself.
6. You have to be considerate and polite to classmates.
7. You must not get discouraged if you fall behind.
8. You are required to attend class regularly.

Activity 41: Identifying Meanings of Must (Not), Have To, and Have Got To

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strong certainty</th>
<th>Obligation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. “Do you hear those people screaming? That ride must be scary!”</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. “You must be over four feet tall to go on this ride.”</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. “You've got to try this roller coaster. It's really fun.”</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. “They must employ thousands of people here. This place is huge!”</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. “You look exhausted. You must have been here all day.”</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. “I'm not surprised they charge so much. It has to cost a lot to maintain this place.”</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. “We'll have to stand in that long line if we want to go on the new ride.”</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. “This has got to be the most exciting place in the world for little kids.”</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 42: Using Combinations of Modals
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. In the near future, citizens may be required to pay fines if they use too much water.
2. Homeowners will not be allowed to water their lawns or wash their cars.
3. Each member of the household will be permitted to take one shower every day.
4. Every one of us should be willing to make these changes for the good of the community.
5. City officials must be able to enforce these rules.
6. In some instances, individuals might be allowed to apply for an exemption from the water limitations.
7. People who are growing fruits and vegetables could be permitted to use more water.
8. If you have an exemption, you should not be required to pay over-use fines.

Think about It
Answers will vary.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
There will be a lot of road construction in the area this summer. Cars will be permitted to use the roads only during the day. Trucks will not be allowed to use the roads at all. Everyone must be willing to use different roads if possible. Construction workers will be able to work on the roads all night long.

Activity 43: Using Combinations of Modals
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Our teacher may not be able to take a vacation soon.
2. Students should be able to finish their homework on time.
3. I would be willing to take your shift at work.
4. I would never be willing to compromise on my morals.
5. Teenagers should sometimes be permitted to make important decisions on their own.
6. University students must be allowed to choose their own classes.
7. Any good friend would be willing to help a friend out.
8. Pretty soon, people in this country will have to vote for a new president.
9. All companies should have to pay taxes.
10. Children shouldn't be permitted to scream in restaurants.
11. The government might have to compromise on some important issues.
12. Someday, people won't be able to remember life before the telephone.

Activity 44: Using Modals for Certainty in the Present
1. A: He's been on the computer for quite a while.
   B: He might be writing an essay.
2. A: The meeting is going long.
   B: They must be arguing about the budget.
3. A: That guy seems to really know what he's doing.
   B: He must come here a lot.
4. A: Mark looks really frustrated.
   B: He must be having trouble with his assignment.
5. A: Someone said they're going to close the store.
   B: They might have been talking about the one on Hill Street.
6. A: Mina never wants to go to the games.
   B: She may think sports are boring.
7. A: What was she doing at the park?
   B: I'm not sure. She might have been playing soccer.
8. A: How did she finish the game so quickly?
   B: She must be playing a lot.
Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. A: He's been on the computer for quite a while.
   B: He might be playing a game.
2. A: The meeting is going long.
   B: They must be discussing the budget.
3. A: That guy seems to really know what he's doing.
   B: He must practice a lot.
4. A: Mark looks really frustrated.
   B: He must be working on a difficult project.
5. A: Someone said they're going to close the store.
   B: They might be closing it next week.
6. A: Mina never wants to go to the games.
   B: She may not like to watch sports.
7. A: What was she doing at the park?
   B: I'm not sure. She might have been playing with her children.
8. A: How did she finish the game so quickly?
   B: She must be a good player.

Activity 45: Using Modals for Certainty in the Past
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. A: I lost my keys.
   B: You must have left them in the car.
2. A: Sara's eyes are all puffy and red.
   B: Yeah, I noticed. She must have been crying before class.
3. A: All the lights are off.
   B: They might have closed early.
4. A: I saw Tony at the lake on Saturday.
   B: He might have been fishing.
5. A: Do you think this chicken is still good?
   B: I wouldn't eat it. It must have been sitting there for hours.
6. A: Why did she buy that ugly sweater?
   B: I don't know. She must have gotten it as a gift.
7. A: Why didn't they hear me knocking?
   B: They might have been listening to music.
8. A: Why isn't there any cereal in the cabinet?
   B: David must have eaten it.

Activity 46: Expressing Opinions with Should
Answers will vary.
1. Our government officials should be hiring people to build roads and bridges.
2. They should be lowering taxes so people have more money to spend.
3. They should be spending money on education so that young people can find better jobs.
4. They should be cutting unemployment benefits so people are motivated to work.
5. They should be offering tax incentives to companies to encourage growth.
6. They should be providing low-interest loans to people with good business ideas.
7. They should be eliminating many government programs to save money.
8. They should be asking people to spend instead of save.

Write about It
Answers will vary.

Activity 47: Using Should to Express Opinions about the Past
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. A: Mark lost some money yesterday. It fell out of his pocket.
   B: He should have put it in his wallet.
2. A: Sue spent all morning ordering stuff online instead of working. Ed caught her and now he's furious.
   B: What does she expect? She should have been working.
3. A: Poor Julia worked nine hours last night and now she's even sicker.
   B: I'm not surprised. She shouldn't have been working.
4. A: Paul caught Misha reading his email last night.
   B: That's terrible! He shouldn't have read someone else's email.
5. A: Ana started looking for a summer job last week. She hasn't found anything yet.
   B: Why did she start so late? She should have been looking for the last month.
6. A: Yuri got rear-ended yesterday. He was texting and didn't notice the light had changed.
   B: Well, he shouldn't have been texting in the car.
7. A: Hassan called at the last minute to cancel.
   B: I know. He should have called us yesterday.
8. A: Mary threw the book to me and knocked over my cup of coffee.
   B: She shouldn't have thrown the book.

Activity 48: Using Adverbs of Certainty
1. This is possibly the best fish stew I've ever had.
2. The chef obviously trained in France.
3. These strawberries have clearly just been picked.
4. This is definitely one of the best restaurants in town.
5. They are evidently offering some new dishes this week.
6. Soon they will possibly start serving lunch as well as dinner.
7. This place probably gets excellent reviews from everyone.
8. I will most likely come back very soon.

Activity 49: Placing Adverbs of Certainty in a Sentence
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Some people clearly spend too much time online, but most people don't.
2. Social media definitely do more good than harm, but everyone should be careful.
3. Television is clearly better today than it was in the past.
4. There are evidently skills we can learn from video games, but I don't play them, so I don't know what they are.
5. In the future, it will probably be important for everyone to have a smartphone, but not now.
6. Thirteen years old is probably about the right time to get a smartphone.
7. People should obviously have to pay for online newspaper subscriptions.
8. It's evidently not a good thing to get new technology the same day it comes out.

Activity 50: Using Adverbs and Prepositional Phrases of Certainty
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. In a way, the past year has certainly been an interesting one, with a new job and a new home.
2. The people in my classes are clearly excited to learn.
3. The world will obviously change very soon.
4. The new year should definitely be exciting.
5. In some respects, teaching and learning are very similar.
6. In a sense, my friends are all very different from each other.
7. Tomorrow, I probably should sleep in.
8. Next week, I'm most likely to spend a lot of time on homework.
9. In a way, I really like reality television.
10. In some respects, 2012 was the best year for music since the start of the new century.

Activity 51: Using Softening Strategies to Make Suggestions
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. "I don't have time to exercise."
   Maybe you could start walking to school.
2. “I can’t stop eating chocolate.”
   May be you shouldn’t keep chocolate in your house.
3. “I always oversleep in the morning.”
   You could put your alarm clock on the other side of the room.
4. “I’m really shy.”
   You might want to practice conversations alone first.
5. “I have trouble getting organized.”
   You could ask a friend to help you.
6. “I’m always late to class.”
   You may want to set an alarm so that you are on time.
7. “I can’t decide what to major in.”
   Maybe you should try many different courses to see what you like.
8. “I can’t find a job.”
   You could always look on the Internet.
9. “I have a friend who is constantly calling and texting me.”
   You might as well turn your phone off when you’re really busy.
10. “I want to ask for a raise, but I’m nervous.”
    You may want to practice with a friend before you approach your boss.
11. “This class is really hard for me.”
    Maybe you should ask the teacher to help you.
12. “I can barely afford to pay my rent these days.”
    You could always get a second job.

Activity 52: Using Negative Questions to Make Suggestions
Answers will vary.
Possible answers include:
1. “I don’t have time to exercise.”
   Couldn’t you walk to school in the morning?
2. “I can’t stop eating chocolate.”
   Shouldn’t you stop buying chocolate?
3. “I always oversleep in the morning.”
   Can’t you put your alarm clock on the other side of the room?
4. “I’m really shy.”
   Couldn’t you meet people in small groups instead of large ones?
5. “I have trouble getting organized.”
   Can’t you ask a friend to help you get organized?
6. “I’m always late to class.”
   Couldn’t you set an alarm to get you to class on time?
7. “I can’t decide what to major in.”
   Couldn’t you take several different classes to see what interests you the most?
8. “I can’t find a job.”
   Couldn’t you look on the Internet?
9. “I have a friend who is constantly calling and texting me.”
   Can’t you ask your friend to stop?
10. “I want to ask for a raise, but I’m nervous.”
    Shouldn’t you get a tutor?
11. “This class is really hard for me.”
    Shouldn’t you get a second job?
12. “I can barely afford to pay my rent these days.”
    Couldn’t you get a second job?

Activity 53: Using Modals for Requests, Offers, and Permission
Answers will vary.
Possible answers include:
1. A: Could I get fresh fruit instead of potatoes?
   B: Yes, of course.
2. A: Could I have a new table? This one is too close to the air conditioning.
   B: Of course. Come with me.
3. A: Could I clean up that spill for you?
   B: Yes, than you.
4. A: Would you mind if I took the day off tomorrow?
   B: No problem. Just make sure you fill out the paperwork.
5. A: Can I help you with that project? It looks like a big one.
   B: Sure. I would love the help!
6. A: Would you mind taking on this additional project?
   B: Not at all.
7. A: Could I see this in a bigger size?
   B: Of course. What size are you looking for?
8. A: Could I try this on?
   B: Of course. The fitting room is right this way.
9. A: Would you like to pay for this with a credit card?
   B: Yes, please.
10. A: Would you like to see a different style?
    B: Please. Do you have something with a different color?
11. A: Would you mind if I looked at the garden?
    B: Not at all. It’s out that door.
12. A: Can I help you with anything in the kitchen?
    B: No, but thank you for offering.
13. A: Would you mind putting your coat in the bedroom?
    B: Not at all. Where is it?

Activity 54: Identifying Hedges with Could and Might
1. The two birds look extremely similar. We could conclude that they are closely related.
2. This is the author’s most well-known novel. One could say that it’s also his most important work.
3. She rarely left the house and avoided all contact with strangers. One might assume that she was deeply depressed during this period.
4. The mice began to solve the maze more quickly. We might assume that the new diet was increasing their intelligence.
5. Six months after the shopping center was built, stores along Main Street began to close. This might suggest that customers feel little loyalty to local business owners.
6. The company’s closure affected the lives of hundreds of people. One could say it is the worst disaster this city has ever faced.
7. Every year, more students are passing the entrance examination. We might conclude that secondary schools are doing a better job of preparing them.
8. The two documents have a similar writing style and use much of the same vocabulary. This might suggest that they were written by the same person.

Write about It
Answers will vary.
Possible answers include:
Gas prices have risen in the last two years. We could conclude that it has become more expensive to convert oil into gas. More and more businesses have moved into this area recently. One might assume that the changes in the tax laws have helped the local economy. The number of students applying to the university goes up every year. This might suggest that there are higher populations of university students each year.

Activity 55: Hedging with May
1. They may have difficulty sleeping at night.
2. They may gain weight and become unhealthy.
3. They may improve their grace and posture.
4. They may have difficulty meeting new people.
5. They may not be able to find a new one.
6. They may get healthier and more fit.
7. They may not be able to keep former friendships.
8. They may have trouble being away from home.

Activity 56: Hedging with Would
Answers will vary.
Possible answers include:
1. I would suggest that we need to put cameras in the classrooms.
2. I would argue that the college should build a new dormitory.
3. I would suggest that students come up with a list of foods they want to see in the dining hall.

4. I would assume that many students will begin to order their books online.

5. I would say that the college can make an effort to make registration less confusing.

6. I would argue that students need to come up with suggestions for activities.

7. I would assume that the college will upgrade the classrooms when it can.

8. I would say that this is very frustrating for students who have to register late.

**Write about It**

**Answers will vary.**

**Activity 57:** Hedging with *Should*

1. The patient's quick recovery *should* demonstrate the usefulness of the procedure.

2. Our research *should* show the negative effect of the oil spill on wildlife.

3. This treatment *should* make the patient much more comfortable.

4. The new software *should* solve most of the problems we have been experiencing.

5. The presentation *should* help students understand the material.

6. The team *should* finish the first research by early next year.

7. The new fertilizer *should* add nutrients to the soil.

8. Our profits *should* increase over the next year.

**Write about It**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

1. Our research should show that businesses should follow environmental laws.

2. Internet television should make televisions obsolete.

3. My friend should finish the marathon in about four hours.

**Wrap-Up**

**A**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

A: I'm going on vacation. I'll be gone for two weeks, and I'll be staying at three different hotels. How should I get from one hotel to another?

B: What time of year are you going?

A: I'll be going this summer.

C: You should take public transportation. The subway is easy to use, and it's faster than a taxi.

A: But is it crowded?

B: Not if you avoid rush hour.

**B**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

Her child must have left the toy on the floor. He shouldn't have left it where she could step on it. She should put ice on her ankle. She might tell her child to put the toy away.

**C**

**Answers will vary.**
Unit 4

Warm-Up

A
1. The first open-heart surgery was attempted in 1952.
2. The first airplane was flown by the Wright brothers in 1903.
3. The camera was invented in 1839.
4. Penicillin, the first antibiotic, was discovered by accident in 1928.
5. The first nuclear power plant was built in 1954.
6. The first motion pictures were shown to a paying audience in 1895.
7. Lasers had been developed by about 1960.
8. A cure for cancer will probably be found in the future.

B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>True</th>
<th>False</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. A passive verb form has a form of the verb be.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. In a sentence with a passive verb form, the subject causes the action.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. A sentence with a passive verb form always has by + a noun phrase.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about It
The sentences in 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11 are passive because the subjects are the receivers of the action.

Activity 2: Noticing Passive Forms
1. Paper is still being wasted. Print jobs are piled at the printer for days and weeks. If you don't need it, don't print it!
2. The conference rooms are often left in a mess. Please put used paper in the recycling bin.
3. Last week some confidential materials were found in the copier room. Please keep all confidential materials with you.
4. Paper towels are being thrown on the floor in restrooms. Please throw them in the garbage.
5. Lengthy conversations are being held in office cubicles, to the dismay of nearby people. Move to a conference room.
6. Some strange things have been found in the recycling bins. Please remember that the remains of your lunch are not recyclable.
7. The same dirty dishes have been left in the kitchen sink for the past four days. Will the owner please wash them?
8. Lights aren't being turned off in empty offices. Please turn off all lights when you leave a room.

C

Activity 1: Performer or Receiver of the Action?
(P)
1. Many people think that William Shakespeare was the greatest writer in the English language.
2. Nobody knows Shakespeare's actual birthday, but scholars think he was born on April 23, 1564.
3. As far as we know, Shakespeare never went beyond grammar school.
4. Shakespeare and his wife had three children: Susanna and twins Judith and Hamnet.
5. Although Shakespeare's son Hamnet died at age 11, his name lives on.
6. The name Hamnet was sometimes written as Hamlet, the title of one of Shakespeare's greatest plays.
7. "Shakespeare" was spelled 80 different ways, including "Shaxpere" and "Shaxberd."
8. Shakespeare's work has been translated into many languages.
9. His plays are read in at least 80 languages.
10. Shakespeare is thought to be the author of 39 plays. About half of them were printed before his death.
11. Some of Shakespeare's most famous works were not published until after his death.

Think about It
The writer used the passive to focus on the problems and not the agents, and to avoid placing blame on anybody.

Activity 3: Forming Simple Present Passive Sentences
1. Every year, about 70 million tons of fish and other sea animals are caught in the oceans.
2. Nuclear energy is produced when atoms of a nuclear fuel, such as uranium, are split apart.
3. There is enough food in the world for everybody. The problem is getting it where it is needed.
4. More than half of the world's languages are spoken by less than 1 percent of the population.
5. When land is surrounded by water on three sides, it is called a peninsula.
6. Modern bridges are built with materials that can expand and contract as the temperature changes.
7. When air is heated, it expands and takes up more space.
8. One large body of water covers about 71 percent of the earth. It is divided by scientists into four oceans: the Pacific, the Atlantic, the Indian, and the Arctic.
9. A tide is the movement of water toward and away from land. Ocean tides are caused mostly by the pull of the moon’s gravity on the earth’s water.

10. Reykjavik, Iceland, is located in a cold northern climate. Buildings in this city are heated by the hot-water springs in the ground below.

11. Ice covers about 10 percent of the earth’s land surface. Nearly all of it is found in Greenland and Antarctica.

12. About 80 percent of microwaves from mobile phones are absorbed by your head.

13. Trees aren’t needed just for wood. They do many other important things such as releasing oxygen for us to breathe.

14. A battery uses special chemicals to make electricity. When the chemicals are used up, the battery stops working.

15. Three of Switzerland’s official languages are German, French, and Italian. All national laws are published in these three languages.

Activity 4: Using Simple Past Passive Verb Forms

1. The first pulley was probably invented in ancient Greece. Pulleys were first employed to help construct buildings.

2. Toothbrushes were probably first used in Egypt and Babylonia about 3500 BCE.

3. The first books were printed in China and Korea about 700 CE.

4. The first English newspaper was published in 1621, but it wasn’t until 1643 that the first newspaper with pictures was printed.

5. The first photograph of land from above was taken from a balloon over a village in France in 1858.

6. The first record player was called a phonograph, and it played cylinders instead of discs.

7. The first gasoline was produced about 1864, but it wasn’t until 1885 that gasoline became really useful.

8. Wristwatches were introduced about 1890, but for many years they were only worn by women.

9. The first contact lenses were developed by a Swiss doctor. They were thick and not very comfortable.

10. The first plastic was called “Parkesine” because it was invented by a scientist named Alexander Parkes.

11. The first World Cup was held in 1930, and Uruguay was chosen to host it.

12. In 1797, André-Jacques Garnerin made the first parachute jump ever. He was dropped from a balloon at about 6,500 feet above Paris.

13. The world’s first skyscraper was completed in Chicago in 1885. This ten-story building was supported inside and outside by a metal frame.

14. The first photograph was taken in 1826 by a French scientist. It’s a picture of the view from an upstairs window of his house.

Activity 5: Using Different Forms of the Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of syllables in the sentence</th>
<th>Number of stressed syllables</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a. John finished it.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. It was finished by John.</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. a. A switch turns on the light.</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. The lights are turned on by a switch.</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. a. Toni Morrison wrote the novel Sula.</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. The novel Sula was written by Toni Morrison.</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. a. The workers are cleaning the streets today.</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. The streets are being cleaned by the workers today.</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. a. The storm destroyed the house.</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. The house was destroyed by the storm.</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. a. A friend introduced them.</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. They were introduced by a friend.</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. a. Their employer is organizing a conference.</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. A conference is being organized by their employer.</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. a. The committee has recently honored Dr. Bell.</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Dr. Bell has recently been honored by the committee.</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. a. One of his students made the furniture.</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. The furniture was made by one of his students.</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. a. Scientists have discovered other stars with planets.</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Other stars with planets have been discovered by scientists.</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about It
The same verb form as the original sentence, only in the passive, was used in the new sentence.

Activity 7: Pronouncing Passive Sentences
Think about It

Speakers say the extra words—helping verbs and by—quickly and don’t put any stress on them.

Activity 8: Error Correction
1. This picture was painted about 100 years ago, but it still looks very modern.
2. My father was left the country after the war ended, and he didn’t go back until he was in his 60s.
3. All of the work was finished before noon, but we were told to stay anyway.
4. This photo was taken by my parents in 1990. You can see my sister next to the car and my brother with a soccer ball.
5. My grandfather was very important to me when I was a child. He was the only person who were helped me.
6. When my father was a young man, he was asked to set up a school in my city. This school has become one of the best schools in the area.
7. My sister is admired by many of her friends because she has appeared on national TV several times.
8. After the storm, our house was surrounded by water. We weren’t able to get into town for over a week, and even then we had to walk.
9. My parents were always willing to give me advice, but they encouraged me to make my own decisions.

Activity 9: Using the Passive
1. The Aztec emperor Montezuma drank hot chocolate every day. The hot chocolate was made with chili peppers and dyed red.
2. Hot chocolate was valued very highly by the Aztecs; in fact, cocoa beans were used in place of money.
3. In some Central American villages back then, no one under the age of 60 was allowed to drink hot chocolate.
4. Over the years, tea has been served as part of different ceremonies.
5. When tea was introduced in the American colonies, many people served the tea leaves with sugar and threw away the water.
6. Tea was so expensive in seventeenth-century Europe that it was kept in locked boxes.
7. The beans of one entire coffee tree are required for a single pound of ground coffee.
8. The amount of coffee you can safely drink has not been determined yet.
9. Today, coffee is grown commercially in more than 50 countries.

Think about It

The simple present passive is used when making a general statement. The simple past passive is used when talking about completed actions in the past. The present perfect passive is used when talking about something that happened in the past but is still true now.

Activity 10: Using the Passive
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I think the window was broken on purpose.

Activity 12: Transitive or Intransitive Verb?
1. Naomi Shihab Nye grew up in St. Louis, Missouri, and spent part of her childhood in the Dominican Republic before returning to the United States, and her Spanish-speaking heritage has influenced her literary work in English. She has published nearly two dozen books including Come with Me: Poems for a Journey, Fuel, and Habibi. Daughter of a Palestinian father and an American mother, she has edited six prize-winning collections of poetry for young readers. She has worked as a visiting writer in schools for 37 years.
2. Julia Alvarez was born in New York City but spent part of her childhood in the Dominican Republic before returning to the United States, and her Spanish-speaking heritage has influenced her literary work in English. She has published nearly two dozen books including Come with Me: Poems for a Journey, Fuel, and Habibi. Daughter of a Palestinian father and an American mother, she has edited six prize-winning collections of poetry for young readers. She has worked as a visiting writer in schools for 37 years.

Think about It

The agent is new, unique, or unexpected: 3, 4, 5, 6, 7
The agent is nonhuman: 1, 2, 8

Activity 14: Identifying Transitive Verbs
1. When Einstein was 5 years old, his father showed him a simple compass. This sparked his interest in science.
1. When Einstein was 5 years old, a simple compass was shown to him by his father. His interest in science was sparked.
2. There were 26 years old.
3. Einstein often had a pipe in his mouth. Wherever he went, a trail of smoke followed him.
4. The artist Pablo Picasso grew up in Spain.
5. Picasso's paintings were unconventional.
6. Picasso's paintings influenced the direction of modern art.
8. The Nobel Prize was won by Einstein in 1921.
9. He completed his first painting at the age of 9.
10. His father sent him to the Royal Academy of San Fernando in Madrid to study art.
11. He was very smart but he wasn't a very good student.
12. Picasso's paintings were unconventional.
13. His unconventional painting style annoyed his father.
14. Picasso's paintings influenced the direction of modern art.

Write about It
1. When Einstein was 5 years old, a simple compass was shown to him by his father. His interest in science was sparked.
2. A strange thing happened to me yesterday.
3. I think I left the door open.
4. Did I hurt you?
5. She always speaks clearly.
6. She speaks English and Spanish.
7. The movie starts at 9:00.
8. The movie was described as boring and too long by the critic.
9. New flowers have been brought to us by the warmer weather.
10. We went to the baseball game after dinner last night.
11. I need someone to walk my dog tomorrow.
12. Did I hurt you?
13. I usually walk to work.
14. Bananas are selling for a dollar a pound.
15. The neighbors finally sold their car.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I was allowed to drive my parents' car.
New 疯狂 have been brought to us by the warmer weather.
The movie was described as boring and too long by the critic.

Activity 15: Distinguishing Transitive and Intransitive Verbs
Transitive verbs: allow, bring, describe, find, include, involve, mean, pull, say
Sample sentences:
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
My parents allowed me to drive their car.

Intransitive verbs: come, die, exist, go, happen, occur, smile, stare, wait
Sample sentences:
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
They came late to the game, so they missed his great shot.

Activity 16: Transitive or Intransitive Meaning?
1. The children opened the door. a
2. The door opened in front of us. b
3. She spoke at our annual meeting. b
4. He speaks English and Spanish. a
5. She always speaks clearly. c
6. The movie starts at 9:00. b
7. I started that book a month ago. a
8. I usually walk to work. b
9. I need someone to walk my dog tomorrow. a
10. We leave for Brazil next week. b
11. I think I left the door open. a
12. Did I hurt you? a
13. My neck hurts. b
14. Bananas are selling for a dollar a pound. b
15. The neighbors finally sold their car. a

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I was allowed to drive my parents' car.
New 疯狂 have been brought to us by the warmer weather.
The movie was described as boring and too long by the critic.

Activity 17: Using Verbs with Two Objects
1. The employees aren't paid a fair salary. A fair salary isn't paid to the employees.
2. Health insurance isn't offered to employees at my company. Employees aren't offered health insurance at my company.
3. People aren't given proper training at this company. Proper training isn't given at this company.
4. The workers haven't always been told the truth. The truth hasn't always been told to the workers.
5. Overtime has never been paid to employees. Employees have never been paid overtime.
6. Employees weren't given a bonus last year. A bonus wasn't given to employees last year.
7. The president was given a huge raise. A huge raise was given to the president.
8. A lot of things are promised to the employees. The employees are promised a lot of things.

Activity 18: Error Correction
1. My father is the person who raised me.
2. In this photograph all of my relatives appear at home.
3. It was a very bad accident and two people were died.
4. A strange thing happened to me yesterday.
5. How were you injured?
6. What was appeared on the screen when you turned on your computer?
7. When did the accident occur? Does anyone know?
8. The money was meant to be payment for my work. (no errors)
9. After the war started, my brothers were ran away to the countryside.
10. All my photographs, school assignments, and telephone numbers are saved on my computer.

Activity 19: Active or Passive?
1. This sport can be played indoors or outdoors, but it has to be played on a hard surface. Each team is made up of five players. b. basketball (P)
2. Players of this sport wear a protective jacket, or hogu. This jacket is able to be fitted with sensors that signal hits to the body. c. tae kwon do (A)
3. Jumps and turns have to be performed perfectly to win at this sport. You definitely aren't supposed to fall down—you lose points for that. c. figure skating (A)
4. In this sport, athletes are supposed to be judged on their takeoff, flight, and entry. The score is then multiplied by a degree of difficulty factor. a. diving (P)
5. Women were allowed to participate in the Olympics for the first time in 1900, but they could only play these two sports. a. golf and lawn tennis (A)
6. In this sport, gloves must be worn, and a punch must be landed with the white part of the glove. a. boxing (P)
7. In this sport, a serve must be made from below the waist, with the racket head below the hand and with both feet on the ground. a. badminton (P)
8. This sport has been played at every Olympic Games though the rules have changed over the years. Today penalties can be awarded for deflecting hits with the hand or refusing to salute one's opponent. b. fencing (P)
9. This sport can be played on a soft or hard surface. Players are supposed to hit the ball back and forth over a net without letting it touch the ground. Any part of the body above the waist may be used to hit the ball, but the ball isn't allowed to be held. c. volleyball (P)
10. In this sport, 85 percent of the bat or racket is supposed to be made of wood. The other 15 percent can be made of other materials. b. table tennis (P)

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
In this sport, routines are performed on various pieces of equipment by each athlete. Deductions can be made if the athlete falls off the equipment or stops in the middle of a routine. The athletes are supposed to show strength and flexibility in their routines. gymnastics

Active or Passive?
1. This sport can be played indoors or outdoors, but it has to be played on a hard surface. Each team is made up of five players. a. basketball (P)
2. Players of this sport wear a protective jacket, or hogu. This jacket is able to be fitted with sensors that signal hits to the body. c. tae kwon do (A)
3. Jumps and turns have to be performed perfectly to win at this sport. You definitely aren't supposed to fall down—you lose points for that. c. figure skating (A)
4. In this sport, athletes are supposed to be judged on their takeoff, flight, and entry. The score is then multiplied by a degree of difficulty factor. a. diving (P)
5. Women were allowed to participate in the Olympics for the first time in 1900, but they could only play these two sports. a. golf and lawn tennis (A)
6. In this sport, gloves must be worn, and a punch must be landed with the white part of the glove. a. boxing (P)
7. In this sport, a serve must be made from below the waist, with the racket head below the hand and with both feet on the ground. a. badminton (P)
8. This sport has been played at every Olympic Games though the rules have changed over the years. Today penalties can be awarded for deflecting hits with the hand or refusing to salute one's opponent. b. fencing (P)
9. This sport can be played on a soft or hard surface. Players are supposed to hit the ball back and forth over a net without letting it touch the ground. Any part of the body above the waist may be used to hit the ball, but the ball isn't allowed to be held. c. volleyball (P)
10. In this sport, 85 percent of the bat or racket is supposed to be made of wood. The other 15 percent can be made of other materials. b. table tennis (P)

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
In this sport, routines are performed on various pieces of equipment by each athlete. Deductions can be made if the athlete falls off the equipment or stops in the middle of a routine. The athletes are supposed to show strength and flexibility in their routines. gymnastics

Activity 20: Using the Passive with Modals

Think about It
Passive forms might be common in course descriptions because these statements are general statements that apply to all students, so the agent is students in general, and the agent is not important.

Activity 21: Using the Passive with Can, Can't, Could, and Couldn't

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. The smell couldn't be described.
2. His tardiness can't be excused.
3. Some accidents can be prevented.

Activity 22: Using the Passive to Identify Common Beliefs

Think about It
It makes sense because these statements are about general beliefs, so the agent is people in general, and the agent is not important.
3. Liquid mercury was once considered a remedy for various illnesses.

Activity 23: Using It + Passive Form + That Clause
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. It is said that more than 20,000 different plants are used for health purposes.
2. For a long time, it was believed that the evil “influence” of the stars caused influenza, or the flu.
3. In sixteenth-century England, it was thought that the color red helped sick people get well.
4. It has been reported that some dogs are able to smell skin cancer.
5. It is believed that doctors prescribe antibiotics too frequently.
6. It is estimated that one in two Americans will get cancer.
7. It is believed that doctors prescribe antibiotics too frequently.
8. It is expected that researchers will find a cure for AIDS.

Think about It
The passive is used because the agent is not important or is very general.

Activity 24: Passive Verb Form or Be + Adjective?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Be + adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Rudolf Nureyev, the famous dancer, was born in a train in 1938.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. From an early age, Nureyev was interested in music and ballet.</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. When he was 17, he was accepted at a famous ballet school in Leningrad.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. His instructor, Alexander Pushkin, was renowned in the world of ballet.</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Pushkin's students were not scolded when they made mistakes.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. In 1958, at the age of 20, Nureyev was asked to join the Kirov Ballet.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. For the most part, his colleagues at the Kirov Ballet were unimpressed with his dancing.</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Nureyev's early style was unrefined.</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. In early films of Nureyev, his shoulders are hunched and his landings are heavy.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Nureyev was dedicated to ballet and he worked hard to become one of the best dancers in the world.</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about It
Answers will vary.

Activity 25: Listening for Past Participles
B: I am. There’s nothing to do.
2. A: What happened to this chair? It’s all wet.  
B: Yeah, it was left outside in the rain last night.
3. A: Look, you’ve made your sister cry. You should be ashamed!  
B: Sorry, Mom.
4. A: I hear your brother didn’t get that job.  
B: Yeah. They gave it to someone with more experience.  
A: He must have been very disappointed.  
B: Yeah, he was.
5. A: Why are you so worried about money?  
B: Because I don’t have any.  
A: That’s a good answer.
6. A: Do you want to go with us to the lecture?  
B: Thanks, but no thanks. I’m really not interested.
7. A: It’s getting late. Are you dressed?  
B: I’m just putting on my shoes.  
A: OK, I’ll wait for you downstairs.
8. A: How did your speech go?  
B: It was all right. At least the audience seemed satisfied.
B: I’m not surprised. They’ve been talking about it for months.
10. A: Are you going to the conference next spring?  
B: I hadn’t thought about it. Where is it being held?  
A: In London.
11. A: I heard there was an accident last night.  
B: Yeah, a car went through a red light and hit another car.  
A: Was anyone hurt?  
B: Luckily, no.

Think about It
The passive is used in conversations 2, 10, and 11.

Activity 26: Choosing the Correct Preposition
True/false answers will vary.

1. I am very interested in politics.  
2. I am engaged to a wonderful person.  
3. I am known for my generosity.  
4. I have never been involved in a car accident.  
5. I am satisfied with my life so far.  
6. Nureyev was dedicated to ballet and he worked hard to become one of the best dancers in the world.  
7. His early style was unrefined.  
8. I am satisfied with the amount of money I have.  

Activity 27: Listening for Get Passives
1. A: Did you hear about the accident?  
B: Yeah, it was on the news.  
A: Did anyone get hurt?  
B: I don’t think so.
2. A: Why don’t you stay home today?  
B: Are you kidding? I could get fired.
3. A: Why are you driving so slowly?  
B: Because I’ve already gotten stopped by the police once today.
4. A: Why are you celebrating?  
B: Because Yoshi just got promoted.  
A: Really? That’s great.
5. A: What’s that smell?  
B: I think it’s the trash. It didn’t get taken out yesterday.
6. A: What are you looking for?  
B: My dark blue shirt.  
A: Look in the closet. It just got washed.
7. A: Do you know if the lights got turned off?
   B: Yeah, I'm pretty sure they did.
8. A: How did you break the window?
   B: I didn't do it. Why do I get blamed for everything?
9. A: I wonder why we haven't received those books yet.
   It's been three weeks.
   B: Maybe they got sent to the wrong address.
10. A: Can I borrow some money?
    B: Again? I thought you just got paid.
    A: I did but I had some bills to pay.
11. A: Are you going to vote tomorrow?
    B: Yes, but I'm not sure why. No one I vote for gets elected.
    A: Are you going to vote tomorrow?
12. A: Don't forget to wash the car today.
    B: I'm not sure I can do it today. Is tomorrow OK?
    A: As long as it gets done this week, I'm happy.

Activity 28: Using Get Passives
1. Did you ever get punished as a child?
2. Did you ever get yelled at by an adult?
3. Did you ever get caught cheating on a test?
4. Did you ever get treated unfairly by someone?
5. Did you ever get hit by someone?
6. Did you ever get elected to something?
7. Did you ever get sent home from school?
8. Did you ever get blamed for something you didn't do?

Activity 29: Using the Passive to Connect Sentences
1. Several people complained about the new schedule.
   ✓ a. The first complaint was made by a member of the school committee.
   b. A member of the school committee made the first complaint.
2. This year's graduation celebration cost $6,549.
   ✓ a. The parents of the graduates raised this money.
   ✓ b. This money was raised entirely by the parents of the graduates.
3. Frederick Tyler designed the new furniture for the town library.
   ✓ a. One of his students made it.
   ✓ b. It was made by one of his students.
4. Football has a long history in Europe.
   ✓ a. In fourteenth-century England, authorities banned the sport for being too violent.
   ✓ b. In fourteenth-century England, it was banned for being too violent.
5. A typical grocery store in 1928 stocked about 870 items.
   ✓ a. Today's supermarkets carry up to 30,000 items.
   ✓ b. Today up to 30,000 items are carried.
6. For many years, bicycle racers wore leather helmets. Then, in the mid-1980s, they started wearing helmets made of strong, dense materials.
   ✓ a. Engineers designed them to protect the racers' heads if they fell.
   ✓ b. They were designed to protect the racers' heads if they fell.
7. Pollution causes poor air quality.
   ✓ a. It can be bad for your health.
   ✓ b. Your health can be affected by it.
8. Antibiotics are important tools in the fight against illness, but some bacteria change.
   ✓ a. Therefore, we need new medicines to kill them.
   ✓ b. Therefore, new medicines are needed to kill them.
9. There are two types of fats: saturated and unsaturated. Saturated fats, such as butter and coconut oil, are solid at room temperature. Unsaturated fats, such as olive oil and corn oil, are liquid at room temperature.
   ✓ a. Doctors consider unsaturated fats better for you.
   ✓ b. Unsaturated fats are considered better for you.
10. The first U.S. flag had 13 white stars.
    ✓ a. A new star has been added for every new state.
    ✓ b. The government has added a new star for every new state.
11. The president is the head of the executive branch of the government.
    ✓ a. He or she is elected by the entire country.
    ✓ b. The entire country elects the president.
12. There are nine justices, or judges, on the U.S. Supreme Court.
    ✓ a. The president nominates them and the Senate approves them.
    ✓ b. They are nominated by the president and approved by the Senate.
13. In this study, French researchers looked at more than 7,000 men and women.
    ✓ a. They recorded information on their education, income, and tobacco use, among other factors.
    ✓ b. Information on their education, income, and tobacco use, among other factors, was recorded.
14. Michelle Kwan became famous when she was quite young.
    ✓ a. She was asked to represent the U.S. as a skater when she was just 13 years old.
    ✓ b. The U.S. Olympic team asked her to represent the U.S. as a skater when she was just 13 years old.
15. In this study, researchers tested students both outdoors in natural settings and inside buildings.
    ✓ a. The students were found to have more energy after spending time in nature.
    ✓ b. Spending time in nature increased the students' energy level.
16. Although he worked as an engineer in the U.S. for 20 years, Gilberto Cetina never forgot the food of his native country.
    ✓ a. Eleven years ago, a restaurant was opened by Gilberto and his son.
    ✓ b. Eleven years ago, he and his son opened a restaurant.

Activity 30: Identifying Reasons for Using the Passive
Marmaduke Hussey, the former chairman of the BBC and managing director of Times Newspapers, has died at the age of 83. Hussey, who lost a leg in World War II, was educated (2) at Trinity College, Oxford. He was trained (2) as a journalist and worked as chief executive and managing director of Times Newspapers, owner of the Times of London, from 1971 to 1980.

He will be remembered (3) for his great vision, his integrity and his forthrightness, but also for his great personal kindness,” BBC Director General Mark Thompson said in an e-mailed statement today. “His contribution to public life was immense,” he said.

Hussey was appointed (2) chairman of the BBC in 1986 thanks in part to his connections to the then ruling Conservative Party under the leadership of Margaret Thatcher. During his time as BBC chairman, he sacked Alasdair Milne as director general in 1987 after a series of rows with the government over the BBC’s independence.

Hussey was made (2) a life peer in 1996, following his retirement from the BBC. He was married to Lady Susan Waldgrave, a lady in waiting to Queen Elizabeth II and godmother to Prince William, who is next in line to the throne after Prince Charles.

Activity 31: Analyzing Passive Forms in Academic Writing
It has recently been shown that stereotypes can have negative, long-lasting effects on the people who experience them. A new study has found that people who experience negative stereotypes and insults in one situation may continue to experience the
effects of those insults in a later, unrelated situation. “Past studies have shown that people perform poorly in situations where they feel they are being stereotyped,” said lead researcher Michael Inzlicht of the University of Toronto in Canada. “What we wanted to do was look at what happens afterwards.” Inzlicht’s study asked if there are any lasting effects of prejudice and if being stereotyped has an impact after the moment when the stereotyping occurs.

The researchers divided female participants into two groups. The women were asked to take a test that would determine their math abilities. One group of women was exposed to negative stereotypes about women and their math abilities. After the test began, the researchers made negative statements about women in order to make them feel more stress. In contrast, another group of women was given the same test, but they were offered strategies to deal with the stress of taking the exam. The researchers were very supportive with this group. After the math test ended, both groups of women were given ice cream samples and were asked to describe the flavors. Next, they were asked to play a video game that allowed them to shoot other players with a loud noise for as long as they wanted.

The women who were discriminated against performed more poorly on the math test. They also ate more ice cream than the women in the supported group, and they showed more hostility and aggression when they played the video game than the other group. These effects were particularly noticeable for the women who experienced negative stereotypes during the math test.

In the end, the study results show that stereotypes have negative effects, even for individuals who leave the environments where they experienced the stereotyping. These effects can be long-lasting. When people are affected by negative stereotyping, they are more likely to be aggressive and show a lack of self-control. After they’ve faced prejudice, they have trouble making good decisions, and they are more likely to make unhealthy food choices and over-eat. Researchers hope the study will make people more aware of these effects of stereotyping. They hope this will help people to better manage their emotions and thoughts when they are faced with stereotypes so that they can show more self-control in later situations.

QUESTIONS
1. Ten
2. One
3. Yes. For example: The researchers divided female participants into two groups. The women were asked to take a test that would determine their math abilities.
4. happens, occurs, began, were, ended, be, are

Activity 32: Using a Series of Verbs
1. The letter was written and sent before the due date.
2. Stone can be carved, chipped, and smoothed.
3. Penicillin was created and used to fight infection.
4. Ice reduces the swelling around an insect bite and eases the itching.
5. Their children were raised and educated in London.
6. The house was designed and built in the 1860s.
7. Scientists have already established that good-looking people are paid better and viewed as smarter and more likeable.
8. The book was written in 1968 and revised in 1982.

Wrap-Up

A
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
The giant female panda cub at the Smithsonian National Zoo has been given a name—Bao Bao. The name was selected after it received more than 123,000 votes online from the public.

Panda mother Mei Xiang (may-SHONG) has been caring for her cub since Bao Bao was born on August 23. Bao Bao will be shown for short periods of time beginning early next year.

The public was asked to vote for one of five names for the new cub. The others were Ling Hua (ling-HWA), Long Yun (long-YOON), Mulan (moo-LAHN), and Zhen Bao (jen-BAO). The names were submitted by the Chinese ambassador.

B
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
The first stapler was used in France in the eighteen century. But the first modern stapler, similar to the ones we use today, was not invented until around 1870.

C
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country: Cambodia</th>
<th>What language is spoken?</th>
<th>Khmer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What percentage of the land is used for agriculture?</td>
<td>30.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What is grown or produced there?</td>
<td>rice, rubber, clothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What natural resources are found there?</td>
<td>oil, gas, timber, fish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
The clocks were taken out of the room. The room has been cleaned up. There’s a different chair in the room.
Unit 5

Warm-Up

A
1. It’s a medium-sized place near my apartment. For very little money, you can get a sandwich and a bowl of soup.
2. There was nothing I could do to calm my fear. I squeezed the armrest of my seat until my knuckles were white. I drank some bottled water to settle my stomach. I tried to read a book and listen to music. No luck. Finally, I started talking to an elderly woman across from me.
3. He had problems with his GPS, and then he had to stop to change a flat tire. He traveled very slowly—only 10 miles in five hours—and along the way his camera got destroyed.
4. It has fairly new tires and only 2,400 miles on the odometer.

B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverbials are always single words.</th>
<th>True</th>
<th>False</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A prepositional phrase can be an adverbial.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some adverbials begin with a to-infinitive.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbials add different kinds of information to a sentence.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbials are common in writing.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C

adverbials: before work, in the dictionary

Activity 1: Noticing How Adverbs Add Information
1. Hurricanes are storms with extremely strong winds.
2. In the Indian Ocean, these storms generally are called cyclones.
3. A storm officially becomes a hurricane when winds reach above 75 miles an hour.
5. They move at about 10 miles an hour in the beginning and gradually gain speed.
6. A fully mature hurricane is almost circular.
7. In the center, or eye, the sky often looks blue.
8. Remarkably, the air is very calm in the eye of the hurricane.
9. The Atlantic hurricane season starts on June 1 and ends on November 30. However, most hurricanes form between August 15 and October 15.

Think about It
Describes a verb: generally, officially, usually, westward, gradually, often
Describes an adjective: extremely, fully, almost, very
Describes the writer’s attitude about the information in the sentence: remarkably
Connects two sentences: however

Activity 2: Categorizing Adverbials
The scariest experience I can remember was an airplane flight I took many years ago. I was at my university and decided to spend the holidays with my father. I was studying in Los Angeles, and he lived in a small city near Phoenix, Arizona. My trip was divided into two flights. First, I flew from Los Angeles to Phoenix. Then I had to change planes to fly to the smaller city. The first flight was on a large jet and was very smooth. By the time I landed in Phoenix, however, it was snowing. I walked to my connecting flight, and imagine my surprise to discover that the plane was small—it probably sat ten people.

Think about It
Show the writer’s feelings: finally, thankfully
Connect two sentences: first, then, however, in fact

Activity 3: Adverbial or Adjectival?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverbial</th>
<th>Adjectival</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. The temperature in there was unbearable.</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Don’t go in there until it cools off.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 2. a. Don't you feel well?  
   b. I don’t think I did well on the test.  

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. a. Lots of people use their cell phones at the grocery store.  
   b. People at the grocery store are always talking on their cell phones.  

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. a. I hope this test isn't going to be hard.  
   b. I was breathing hard after running for so long.  

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5. a. On Sundays we usually eat early.  
   b. We usually have an early dinner on Sundays.  

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6. a. There isn't anything on the table.  
   b. The things on the table are yours.  

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7. a. Travelers without a guide can't visit this area.  
   b. You can't travel there without a guide.  

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8. a. There are many opportunities for work and education in a large city.  
   b. Apartments in a large city are usually quite expensive.  

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9. a. On the radio, you can hear many different kinds of programs.  
   b. I can't hear the music on the radio.  

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Write about It Activity 4: Explaining *When, How Often, Where, and How Far*  

1. *when*  
2. *when*  
3. *where*  
4. *how often*  
5. *where*  
6. *when*  
7. *when*  
8. *how often*  
9. *when*  
10. *how far*  
11. *when*  
12. *how often*  
13. *when*  
14. *when*  

### Think about It  

1. noun phrase  
2. prepositional phrase

### 3. prepositional phrase  
4. noun phrase  
5. prepositional phrase  
6. prepositional phrase  
7. adverb  
8. noun phrase  
9. adverb  
10. noun phrase  
11. prepositional phrase  
12. adverb  
13. prepositional phrase  
14. prepositional phrase

### Write about It  

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:  

- Have you been working working hard recently?  
- Is the test going to be hard?  
- What sports do you do well?  
- Do you feel well today?

### Activity 5: Explaining *When, How Long, and How Often*  

**Students will identify the form of each adverb in the Think about It activity.**  

1. How many times a day does the human eye blink?  
2. How long do the Olympic Games last?  
3. How often does a presidential election take place in the United States?  
4. How long does it take to drive across the United States?  
5. How long does it take to become a medical doctor?  
6. When did the first modern Olympic Games take place?  
7. How often do strong earthquakes happen worldwide?  
8. How often do small earthquakes occur?  
9. How long does it take the earth to go around the sun?  
10. How often does the earth stop moving?  

### Write about It  

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:  

- How many times a day does the human eye blink? About 17,000 times a day.  
- How long do the Olympic Games last? Generally between 12 and 17 days.  
- How often does a presidential election take place in the United States? Once every 4 years.  
- How long does it take to drive across the United States? Between four and five days.  
- How long does it take to become a medical doctor? About 11 years.  
- When did the first modern Olympic Games take place? Generally once a month.  
- How often do strong earthquakes happen worldwide? Generally once a month.  
- How often do small earthquakes occur? Hundreds of times each day.  
- How long does it take the earth to go around the sun? One year.  
- How often does the earth stop moving? [difficult to answer differently]

### Write about It  

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:  

- How often do you eat out?  
- How long does it take to get from your home to school?  
- When are you going to work tomorrow?
Elements of Success L3 Answer Key.indd   41

When did you start studying English?
How long have you lived in your current home?

Activity 6: Explaining How
1. The only planet that rolls on its side like a ball is Uranus.
2. It can take the body over 50 hours to digest food completely.
3. A rabbit can see on both sides of itself without moving its head.
4. The left side of your body is controlled by the right side of your brain.
5. Eating well can improve your ability to remember things.
6. The average cough comes out of the mouth at 60 miles (96.5 km) per hour.
7. It’s almost impossible to sneeze without closing your eyes open.
8. When you don’t get enough sleep, your brain can’t function at full capacity.
9. A moderately severe sunburn damages the blood vessels extensively.
10. A candle flame typically burns at about 1000° C.
11. Women can identify smells more easily than men.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. The only planet that rolls on its side like a ball is Uranus.
2. It can take the body over 50 hours to digest food totally.
3. A rabbit can see on both sides of itself without turning its head.
4. The left side of your body is controlled with the right side of your brain.
5. Eating properly can improve your ability to remember things.
6. The average cough comes out of the mouth very quickly.
7. It’s almost impossible to sneeze without closing your eyes.
8. When you don’t get enough sleep, your brain can’t function very efficiently.
9. A moderately severe sunburn damages the blood vessels greatly.
10. A candle flame typically burns very hot.
11. Women can identify smells easier than men.

Activity 7: Explaining When, Where, and How
1. when
2. how
3. when
4. when
5. when
6. when
7. how
8. where

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Dear Sir or Madam:
I would like to call your attention to a problem I am having. Last night, I went with my family to your restaurant. Even though we had a reservation, we had to wait for two hours to get a table. We arrived ten minutes before our reservation time, and the staff saw our reservation in the book. I am concerned because I have a reservation at your restaurant for next Wednesday, March 12 at 12:30. We’re having a special lunch for my boss, and we can’t be out of the office for two hours. Please confirm that we have a reservation by Monday, March 10. My phone number is 555-0111. Thank you for your attention to this matter.

Activity 8: Explaining Why
Students will circle the adverbials in the Think about It activity.
1. The earth’s polar regions have begun to change drastically as a result of global warming.
2. Many schools have banned cell phones from classrooms because of the distractions they cause.
3. The government began an investigation of the car (after two people died in accidents) because of a possible problem with the brakes.
4. Human life expectancy has increased steadily mainly because of advances in medicine.
5. Taking a nap (after the midday meal) used to be a common practice in many countries. (Unfortunately), this practice is now less common due to the demands of the workplace.
6. Giraffes vary in color (from light brown to almost black). The difference is due in part to the animal’s diet.
7. As a result of the growth of cities, housing has become more expensive.
8. (In the future), many ski resorts may be unable to operate due to the lack of snow.
9. (In the U.S.), it’s against the law to discriminate against someone on account of age.
10. The tennis match was stopped (at 7 p.m.) on account of darkness.
11. As a result of the weak economy, businesses are hiring fewer people.
12. Because of quickly changing job markets, education is an ongoing, lifelong process.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Because of the demand for tickets to the game, the prices have increased.
On account of the weather today, the race has been canceled.
As a result of the sickness that has been going around, local doctors are asking people to remember to wash their hands regularly.

Activity 9: Identifying To-Infinitives of Purpose
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Practice your speech several times to hear how it will sound to the audience.
2. Just before your speech, do some breathing exercises to help yourself relax.
3. Use pictures and diagrams to communicate difficult information.
4. Keep your eyes on your audience to watch for signs of confusion or boredom.
5. Use facial expressions and gestures to emphasize your main points.
6. Use your voice like a musical instrument to keep the sounds interesting.
7. Increase and decrease the volume of your voice to help communicate your message.
8. Ask questions to involve your audience.
9. Start your speech with something interesting to get the audience’s attention.
10. Include some personal stories to add fun to your speech.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Practice your speech several times to find out how much time it will take.
2. Just before your speech, do some breathing exercises to make sure you are calm.
3. Use pictures and diagrams to explain difficult information.
4. Keep your eyes on your audience to see if people are losing interest.
5. Use facial expressions and gestures to make your presentation more interesting.
6. Use your voice like a musical instrument to sound more interesting to your audience.
7. Increase and decrease the volume of your voice to make sure people understand the important information.
8. Ask questions to make sure your audience understands you.
9. Start your speech with something interesting to make your audience want to hear more.
10. Include some personal stories to make your presentation interesting.

**Write about It**
**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:
1. When you invite someone over for dinner, plan the menu in advance.
2. Choose foods you have cooked before to make sure you know how to make them.
3. Review the recipes to make a list of things you need to buy at the store.
4. Cook some foods in advance to make sure you have plenty of time to get ready.
5. Ask your friends about their likes and dislikes to be sure everyone can eat what you're serving.

**Activity 11: Using Adverbials to Explain Why**
**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:
1. Classes were canceled because of the terrible weather.
2. Fewer people can travel nowadays because of the high price of gasoline.
3. A cell phone can last for many hours on account of the rechargeable battery.
4. A lot of people take naps here in the summer due to the heat.
5. I wasn't successful in learning Chinese as a result of my lack of self-discipline.
6. Due to the increased efficiency of farms, people here have plenty of food.
7. California is the top producer of food in the U.S. because of its great climate.
8. Some scientists say we are having more storms due to warming weather.
9. I would like to visit Poland someday on account of my ancestors living there.
10. On account of their shared experiences, brothers and sisters get to know each other well.

**Activity 12:** Choosing Degree Adverbials
1. From the moon, the earth looks very smooth, like a ball.
2. China covers an area slightly larger than that of the U.S.
3. The Nile River is a little bit longer than the Amazon River.
4. Mount Everest is considerably higher than Mount Fuji.
5. Brazil is much bigger than Venezuela.
6. Annual rainfall varies greatly around the world.
7. An island is completely surrounded by water.
8. It's extremely cold in Antarctica. In some places the average temperature is –58 degrees Celsius.
9. The population of Mexico City is significantly larger than the population of Paris.
10. Although the sun doesn't rise on parts of Greenland for three whole months, it is never totally dark there.

**Think about It**
Describe an adjective/adverb: very, slightly, a little bit, considerably, much, extremely, totally
Describe a verb: greatly, completely
The adverbials describing adjectives and adverbs come before them. The adverbials describing verbs come after (6) or in the middle (7) of them.

**Activity 14: Using Degree Adverbials**
**Answers will vary in the second sentences.**
1. The public transportation system here is fairly reliable.
   The public transportation system here is somewhat reliable.
2. The subway stations are extremely clean.
   The subway stations are very clean.
3. The streets are pretty clean.
   The streets are quite clean.
4. It gets quite cold here in the winter.
   It gets extremely cold here in the winter.
5. The buses here are never on time, but the subways are extremely reliable.
   The buses here are never on time, but the subways are very reliable.
6. I stayed in a very lively part of town.
   I stayed in a rather lively part of town.
7. It's quite beautiful here in the summertime.
   It's absolutely beautiful here in the summertime.
8. The mountains in the distance are incredibly beautiful.
   The mountains in the distance are very beautiful.
9. Although the city is rather quiet during the week, the streets get pretty crowded on the weekend.
   Although the city is fairly quiet during the week, the streets get quite crowded on the weekend.
10. Because of the bitterly cold weather in winter, people spend a lot of time indoors.
    Because of the extremely cold weather in winter, people spend a lot of time indoors.

**Write about It**
**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:
1. The flowers in the springtime are very pretty.
2. The restaurants in Dallas are rather good.
3. The public transportation system is rather limited.

**Activity 15: Noticing Focusing Adverbials**
1. A: Do you ever get homesick?
   B: Sure—especially on holidays.
2. A: Where's Amanda?
   B: She's already gone.
   A: You're kidding! She didn't even say goodbye.
   B: I think she was in a hurry.
3. A: Did you tell James about the meeting?
   B: Yeah, but he didn't seem particularly interested.
4. A: Do you want something for breakfast?
   B: No, thanks. I only eat breakfast on weekends.
5. A: Want to go to a movie tonight?
   B: Can't we just stay home?
   A: Sure. That's fine with me.
6. A: Have you heard anything about our new boss?
   B: Not a word. I don't even know her name.
7. A: Wow! That was a big bird.
   B: Really? I didn't even see it.
8. A: Don't you need a rest?
   B: No, why?
   A: Because you're always doing something.
   I get tired watching you.
3. No one came to the meeting. It was really cold there.

2. Excuse me for interrupting. I just wanted to ask a quick question.

1. This room is just a mess.

Activity 17: Choosing the Correct Meaning
1.  Excuse me for interrupting. I just wanted to ask a quick question.  3.  This room is just a mess.  4.  It was really cold there just like you said it would be.  1.  John is fine. I just talked to him.  2.  I brought something just for you.  3.  After she was kicked out of school, she just disappeared.  4.  I'm just not interested in poetry.  4.  He cut his leg just above the ankle.  1.  Chicago is just north of here.  11.  We did it just for fun.  3.  I'm not really hungry—just had lunch.  2

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. The building is just on the other side of that hill.
2. I just washed the floor.
3. Are you just going to do your math homework, or are you going to do the rest of it, too?
4. Just do as I asked you to, please.

Activity 18: Using Stance Adverbials to Give an Opinion or Evaluation
1. Luckily, in my case, I have managed, by writing, to do the one thing that I always wanted to do.
2. Sadly, it's much easier to create a desert than a forest.
3. Fortunately, it doesn't seem to have made a lot of difference to my audience that I'm as bald as a billiard ball!
4. To my surprise, my 70s are nicer than my 60s and my 60s than my 50s, and I wouldn't wish my teens and 20s on my enemies.
5. Dad taught me everything I know. Unfortunately, he didn't teach me everything he knows.
6. Thankfully, I have my mom and a small group of close friends who are there for me 24/7 and whom I can trust and depend on.
7. I would've loved to have been in a band, but sadly I just wasn't good enough.
8. I've broken my nose, I've broken ribs. You name it. In fact, we just got back from South America, and I fell over a monitor speaker on the stage and almost ended up in the front row of the audience. I managed to sprain my wrist on that one but luckily nothing was broken.
9. Winning is a habit. Unfortunately, so is losing.
10. I think maybe ten years from now, I'm hopefully going to be, in like, Tahiti or something. Kicking back like in my huge mansion, if everything goes right, it's all up to me.
11. I love having a big family. I think it's easier, oddly, in some ways, having three children as opposed to one.
12. A sense of freedom is something that, happily, comes with age and life experience.

Activity 19: Using Stance Adverbials to Show Certainty or Doubt
1. A: How was your plane trip?  B: Scary. Next time I'll definitely go by train.
2. A: Have you eaten at the new restaurant?  B: Yeah, and I'd definitely go again.
5. A: I'm going to Matt's house tonight. Maybe you'll come?  B: No, not tonight.
7. Clearly, it's both advantageous and enjoyable to have a brother or sister, especially if you are close in age.
8. Some people prefer vigorous exercise, such as running. Others prefer less strenuous activities, such as walking. Of course, more strenuous activities burn more calories.
9. I am especially concerned about the spread of consumer culture in the twenty-first century. There are certainly many other important problems in the world today, but consumerism is one of the least noticed.
10. Students should be encouraged to learn a second and possibly even a third foreign language.
11. Slang and other informal spoken language obviously has no place in school reports.
12. Without a doubt, recreation is essential to a healthy life.
13. The smartphone has changed the way people communicate, and it will surely see many innovations in the future.

Think about It
Commas appear after stance adverbials when they appear at the beginning of a sentence.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
7. Undoubtedly, it's both advantageous and enjoyable to have a brother or sister, especially if you are close in age.
8. Some people prefer vigorous exercise, such as running. Others prefer less strenuous activities, such as walking. Clearly, more strenuous activities burn more calories.
9. I am especially concerned about the spread of consumer culture in the twenty-first century. There are definitely many other important problems in the world today, but consumerism is one of the least noticed.
10. Students should be encouraged to learn a second and perhaps even a third foreign language.
11. Slang and other informal spoken language clearly has no place in school reports.
12. Of course, recreation is essential to a healthy life.
13. The smartphone has changed the way people communicate, and it will obviously see many innovations in the future.

Activity 20: Identifying Other Stance Adverbials
1. A: I can't believe you wrote this.
   B: But I did, really.
2. A: Will you still be here in an hour?
   B: Actually, I won't. I'm leaving in a few minutes and I won't be back until this evening.
3. A: Is that your money over there?
   B: I don't honestly know. It might be.
4. A: Did you like my speech?
   B: Yeah, it was great. Seriously, I'm kind of jealous. I wish I could speak in public like that.
5. A: Hey, Sam. Do you have a few minutes? I have some questions.
   B: Yeah, I need to talk to you, too. In fact, I've been trying to get in touch with you all week.
6. A: That was a good movie, don't you think?
   B: To tell you the truth, I thought it was really strange.
7. **Technically speaking**, your brain has the capacity to store everything you experience.
8. Your brain processes pain signals but it doesn’t **actually** feel pain.
9. It may seem impossible to come up with a single definition of psychology, but **actually** we can: psychology is the scientific study of mental processes and behavior.
10. Many people change careers at some point. **In fact**, many people have several careers in their lifetime.
11. Humans are social animals. We aren’t supposed to live alone. Relationships stimulate our brains—**in fact**, socializing with others is a great form of brain exercise.
12. The Romans invented indoor plumbing using lead pipes. **In fact**, the word plumbing comes from the Roman word for lead, **plumbum**.

**Write about It**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include):

I really want to go with you to the park tomorrow. **Actually**, I’m not sure if I’ll be able to.
I **honestly** don’t know if my parents will let me go.
**Seriously**, I will ask them.
To **tell you the truth**, I think they’ll ask about my grade on yesterday’s test.
**Technically speaking**, I’m not allowed to go out if I get a bad grade.

**Activity 21:** Using Stance Adverbials

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

1. **Not surprisingly**, your skin is thickest on the bottom of your feet.
2. **Obviously**, mothers who work outside the home have less time to spend with their children.
3. To **tell you the truth**, I think you are making a big mistake.
4. **Honestly**, I didn’t break it.
5. **Honestly**, I don’t know how long I will be here.
6. **Luckily**, she didn’t break her leg.
7. **Undoubtedly**, you will do well on the exam.
8. **Obviously**, you aren’t happy here.
9. **Seriously**, I don’t want you to go.
10. **Thankfully**, I didn’t have to go.
11. **Maybe** they will get here in time.

**Activity 22:** Connecting Sentences in Different Ways

1. The island of Greenland belongs to Denmark. **However**, if it were a separate country, it would be the thirteenth largest country in the world.
2. China covers an area only slightly larger than that of the U.S.; the population of China, **however**, is nearly five times greater.
3. **The gravity of the moon is one-sixth that of Earth; on the moon, therefore**, you would weigh one-sixth of what you weigh on Earth.
4. **We use linking adverbials to connect ideas in writing.** **However**, it’s important not to overuse them.

**Activity 23:** Using Linking Adverbials to Signal a Result

1. Foldable scissors are very small; consequently, they fit easily in a purse or pocket.
2. I practiced the piano several hours a day. **Therefore**, I made progress quickly.
3. For me, a good job is one where I can help others become smarter. **Thus**, I can think of nothing better than being a teacher.
4. Centuries ago, children were considered to be small adults. **As a result**, very little was done to help address the special emotional needs of young children.
5. **Much of the surface of Mars is covered by reddish rocks and sand.** As a result, people often call Mars the red planet.
6. Living in another country gave me the opportunity to meet new people and to learn about another culture. As a result, I now love to travel to foreign countries.
7. The number of overweight children is increasing. **As a result**, schools are serving less junk food.
8. **In psychology, the term behavior refers to almost any activity.** Thus, the blink of an eye is an example of a behavior.

**Activity 24:** Result or Contrast?

1. The tallest tree in the world today is a redwood tree. In the nineteenth century, however, much taller eucalyptus trees existed.
2. Japan is a popular tourist spot for many Koreans. **As a result**, bookstores in Korea carry a lot of travel books for Japan.
3. Both humans and giraffes have seven neck vertebrae. For giraffes, **however**, each one can be more than 10 inches (25.4 centimeters) long.
4. I’ve never thought of him as being sad. **On the contrary**, he seems happy and full of life.
5. Something always went wrong on our family vacations. One year, everyone got sick. Another year, it rained the whole time. **Nevertheless**, now we look back on these incidents and laugh.
6. My sister got into all the schools she applied to. I, on the other hand, didn’t get into any of them.
7. Spanish and Italian male colleagues may embrace when they greet each other. **In contrast**, the Japanese usually bow.
8. The western calendar is based on the length of the seasonal year. The lunar calendar, **in contrast**, is based on the cycle of the moon.
9. When I first moved to Canada, I was very homesick. **However**, once I started school, I made a lot of friends, and I began to feel more comfortable.
10. Divorce has become common in some countries. Still, the traditional role of the father as wage-earner and the mother as homemaker continues to be viewed as the norm.

11. The universe is so large that we can’t measure it in miles or kilometers. Instead, we measure it in light years.

12. I am a good judge of character. I can tell if someone is trustworthy. However, I am not very organized.

Think about It
There is a surprising contrast in sentences 1 and 3.

Activity 25: Other Ways to Express a Result or Contrast
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Running your own business can be difficult; however, it can prove to be extremely rewarding.
2. His mother worked for a university; as a result, they didn’t have to pay tuition.
3. Modern technology has freed us from many chores; consequently, we have more time to enjoy ourselves.
4. Several years ago I was thinking of taking a trip to Russia. At the time, I was living in California; therefore, it was going to be quite a journey just getting there.
5. She was very young and small; nevertheless, she was able to skate beautifully with the eyes of the whole world on her.
6. He worked 20 hours every day to make his business successful; however, after several years, he finally gave up.
7. Most people have more than one skill or talent, but in spite of that, many are still able to change careers if they choose.
8. I most often get sick when I am run down; as a result, I try to make sure I eat well, exercise daily, and get plenty of sleep.
9. It's often a difficult decision to leave children in the care of others—still, millions of women do it.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Running your own business can be difficult; as a result, many businesses fail during their first year.
2. His mother worked for a university; therefore, he and his brothers received a discount on their tuition.
3. Modern technology has freed us from many chores; consequently, we have more time to enjoy ourselves.
4. Several years ago I was thinking of taking a trip to Russia. At the time, I was living in California; consequently, I allowed an extra day to recover from jet lag.
5. She was very young and small; as a result, she was very nervous when she performed.
6. He worked 20 hours every day to make his business successful; consequently, his business thrived.
7. Most people have more than one skill or talent, and as a result, they are able to change careers if they choose.
8. I most often get sick when I am run down; nonetheless, I work very long days.
9. It's often a difficult decision to leave children in the care of others—however, many families have no other choice.

Activity 26: Adding Examples
1. Our ears can’t hear every sound. For instance, **ultrasonic sounds** are too high-pitched for humans to hear.
2. Efforts to use recycled products haven’t always been successful. In the 1990s, for example, **recycled wool came and went**, mostly because the clothes were very itchy.
3. When you travel to another country, it’s interesting to learn about cultural differences. For example, **the food may be very different from what you are used to**.
4. I think that feeling a little stress can be a good thing. For example, **worrying about a test might actually make me study harder**.
5. Rubber is a common material used in sports equipment. For example, **it is the main ingredient in bicycle tires and basketballs**.
6. Because of the Internet, we can find out how people in other countries are dealing with events. For instance, **we can hear stories from people who have been affected by earthquakes or typhoons**.
7. Some places have very old laws that don’t make any sense. For instance, **in one state in the U.S., it is against the law to carry an ice-cream cone in your pocket**.
8. At times it’s natural to feel angry. For example, **being treated unfairly upsets most people**.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Our ears can’t hear every sound. For instance, some sounds are too low-pitched for humans to hear.
2. Efforts to use recycled products haven’t always been successful. In 2002, for example, New York City stopped recycling glass and cans for a few years because it was too expensive.
3. When you travel to another country, it’s interesting to learn about cultural differences. For example, different cultures celebrate different holidays.
4. I think that feeling a little stress can be a good thing. For example, **having a deadline can make me work faster**.
5. Rubber is a common material used in sports equipment. For example, it is used in tennis balls and soccer balls.
6. Because of the Internet, we can find out how people in other countries are dealing with events. For instance, we can hear stories from people who are affected by earthquakes.
7. Some places have very old laws that don’t make any sense. For instance, in one state in the U.S., it is against the law to drive a car with an uncaged bear in it.
8. At times it’s natural to feel angry. For example, **long delays can upset people**.

Activity 27: Signaling New Related Information
Students will circle the adverbials in the Think about It activity.
1. When you are visiting Hong Kong, Kowloon Peninsula may be a better place to stay because it is less crowded. Moreover, it has great museums and good views of the Hong Kong skyline.
2. The bedrooms are comfortable but very dark. The closets are tiny, so good luck if you want to hang up any clothes. And housekeeping could be better. (During our entire stay, the floors were never cleaned. In addition, the furniture in our room was covered with a thick layer of dust.)
3. Coping with stress is very important, and I have a few main methods of helping myself stay relaxed. The first things I always try to do are to slow down my breathing, quiet my thoughts, and relax my muscles. I also try to speak more calmly and slowly. Furthermore, I often try to take myself out of the stressful environment. For me, the best thing to do is to take a quiet walk alone or to exercise.

Activity 28: Signaling Additional Information
1. There are many interesting things to do in Washington, D.C. A visitor can tour the White House, the home of the president, visit the many historical museums, or walk around government buildings such as the Supreme Court and the Capitol. Besides touring the educational sites in the city, visitors can do fun activities such as visiting the zoo.
2. In the past, people spent many hours taking care of basic chores such as cooking and cleaning.
3. I would need a very good reason to fire an employee. For example, I would fire an employee who was stealing from the company.
4. Many forms of exercise, for example, running, playing sports, and swimming, are good for the body.
5. Cape Town in South Africa is a great place to visit. In addition to the spectacular mountains, you will find some beautiful beaches there.
6. Whatever your profession is, you can find work in a large city. In addition, there are many different kinds of schools.
7. People in different cultures value different things. For instance, in some countries people value punctuality—they expect you to be on time.
8. You should encourage her to avoid bad habits such as smoking and drinking.

**Write about It**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

1. There are many interesting things to do in Washington, D.C. A visitor can tour the White House, the home of the president, visit the many historical museums, or walk around government buildings such as the Supreme Court and the Capitol. In addition, visitors can do fun activities such as visiting the zoo.
2. In the past, people spent many hours taking care of basic chores. For instance, cooking and cleaning took up a lot of time.
3. I would need a very good reason to fire an employee such as stealing from the company.
4. Many forms of exercise besides running, playing sports, and swimming are good for the body.
5. Cape Town in South Africa is a great place to visit. In addition, visitors can do fun activities such as visiting the zoo.
6. Whatever your profession is, you can find work in a large city. In addition, there are many different kinds of schools.
7. People in different cultures value different things such as punctuality—in some countries people expect you to be on time.
8. You should encourage her to avoid bad habits. For instance, smoking and drinking are good to avoid.

**Activity 29: Noticing Linking Adverbials**

1. If I knew that I would die in a few months, I would stop worrying about long-term goals. I think that knowing I would die soon could help me to focus on the here and now.
2. There is a lot that I would like to accomplish in the next ten years. I think that this will be a very busy time for me.
3. I would need a very good reason to fire an employee such as stealing from the company.
4. Many forms of exercise besides running, playing sports, and swimming are good for the body.
5. Cape Town in South Africa is a great place to visit. In addition, visitors can do fun activities such as visiting the zoo.
6. Whatever your profession is, you can find work in a large city. In addition, there are many different kinds of schools.
7. People in different cultures value different things such as punctuality—in some countries people expect you to be on time.
8. You should encourage her to avoid bad habits. For instance, smoking and drinking are good to avoid.

**Activity 30: Adding a Summary Statement**

1. To run your own business, you must be very organized and hard-working. If you are involved in the hiring process, you must also be a good judge of character. I do have some of these skills. I am one of the most hard-working people I know. Even if it isn't necessary, I always try to do a job to perfection. I am also a good judge of character. I can tell when someone is trustworthy or when a person is not. Unfortunately, I am not very organized. I would have a difficult time keeping an eye on everything related to the business, like legal documents and receipts. In addition, I have a hard time making a budget and keeping to it. This skill is essential for a business owner. In conclusion, I think that I could run my own business, but I would need an assistant and a financial advisor.

2. For me, the choice of whether or not to live in a big city is easy to make: Why would I want to live where there is such a high concentration of people? Why would I want to spend so much money to live in a tiny apartment? And why would I want to be exposed to noise and air pollution? Obviously, you get less for your money in the city. Overall, it's not very pleasant to live in a big city.

**Activity 31: Hedging a Statement in Speaking**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

1. Maybe you should come back later.
2. You probably called the wrong number.
3. Are you by any chance driving to the meeting tomorrow?
4. She didn't like my essay. In fact, she said it was sort of boring.
5. Arent you kind of young to own your own business?
6. He has a loud, kind of unpleasant voice.
7. Perhaps you're mistaken.
8. By any chance, is Dr. Martin at home?
9. Maybe you upset her.
10. Can I borrow ten dollars by any chance?

**Think about it**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

In sentences 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 9, and 10, *kind of* and *sort of* don't really fit because they are stance adverbials instead of adverbials that express certainty.

In sentences 4, 5, and 6, *by any chance*, *maybe*, *probably*, and *perhaps* don't really fit because they express degrees of certainty instead of being stance adverbials.

**Activity 32: Hedging a Statement in Writing**

1. Deserts are dry regions, *generally* receiving less than ten inches of precipitation a year.
2. Mothers who work outside the home obviously have less time to spend with their children. According to a recent study, however, this does not necessarily have a negative effect on their children.
3. This is arguably the best museum in the whole country.
4. In general, smoking is no longer fashionable in Canada. In many other parts of the world, however, smoking is still growing in popularity.
5. Researchers have found these substances *almost* everywhere they have looked for them.
6. The risk to humans is uncertain in part because few tests have been done.
7. In most cases, the assumption that wealthy countries have better education systems than poorer countries is correct.
8. Researchers have long suggested that in “noun-friendly” languages including English, infants’ attention is focused mainly on objects, typically marked by nouns.
9. The number of farm workers has decreased steadily over the years. This is primarily because the use of sophisticated machines has reduced the need for labor.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Deserts are dry regions, usually receiving less than ten inches of precipitation a year.
2. Mothers who work outside the home obviously have less time to spend with their children. According to a recent study, however, this does not always have a negative effect on their children.
3. This is perhaps the best museum in the whole country.
4. For the most part, smoking is no longer fashionable in Canada. In many other parts of the world, however, smoking is still growing in popularity.
5. Researchers have found these substances nearly everywhere they have looked for them.
6. The risk to humans is uncertain partly because few tests have been done.
7. Most of the time, the assumption that wealthy countries tend to have better education systems than poorer countries is correct.
8. Researchers have long suggested that in “noun-friendly” languages including English, infants’ attention is focused primarily on objects, typically marked by nouns.
9. The number of farm workers has decreased steadily over the years. This is mostly because the use of sophisticated machines has reduced the need for labor.

Activity 33: Using Linking Adverbials in Writing
1. Many people think Japan is one large island; however, it is actually thousands of islands.
2. Much of Japan is mountainous; as a result, there is little farmland.
3. Japan has only a small supply of minerals. It is nonetheless one of the world’s richest nations.
4. Volcanic eruptions take place frequently. In addition, earthquakes are common occurrences.
5. Japanese trees are often cultivated as miniatures; likewise, gardens are often designed as smaller versions of the surrounding landscape.
6. The largest of the main islands, Honshu, is less than 200 miles wide at its greatest width; consequently, no part of Japan is more than 100 miles from the sea.
7. Few inlets are found on the east coast north of Tokyo; however, south of Tokyo are many of the best harbors.
8. Every valley in Japan has a stream; however, there aren’t any long, navigable rivers in Japan.
9. In the Japanese mountains, there are about 200 volcanoes; however, only about 60 are still active.

Activity 34: Choosing Linking Adverbials
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Parenting Styles
There are three basic styles of parenting: permissive, dictatorial, and authoritative. Generally, each style has fairly predictable effects on children.

Permissive parents have very few demands of their children. They don’t make many rules, and when they do, they often fail to enforce them. These parents generally act more like friends (rather than parents). As a result, their children don’t learn much about good behavior and the consequences for bad behavior. Children raised in this way can be impulsive and irresponsible.

Dictatorial parents are inflexible. They make strict rules and demand obedience. When their children disobey, they are usually punished harshly. Dictatorial parents don’t trust their children to make decisions for themselves, and they often don’t explain why they make such strict rules. Consequently, their children are often not very good at making decisions.

Authoritative parents are in the role of authority figures, but they are not dictators. They expect their children to obey their rules. However, they are caring, flexible, and often willing to listen to their children’s opinions.

Emotions
According to psychologists, all humans show distinctive facial expressions for six basic emotions: disgust, sadness, happiness, fear, anger, and surprise. Furthermore, these expressions appear to be universal. This means that people from different cultures across the world use and recognize the same expressions for the same emotions. Of course, not every person will have the same emotional responses to the same things, but we do seem to have the same way of showing these six emotions without using language.

(For example, if you have just given a presentation to your classmates, one that you have dreaded for weeks, you might feel wonderful instead of feeling just OK. Similarly, it is not unusual to feel a little sad or depressed after experiencing a lot of joy or excitement for a period of time. If your parents live far away and you visit them only once a year for a short time, you might feel very happy during their visit. However, once they leave, you may experience some sadness or depression in their absence.)

QUESTIONS
1. Answers will vary.
2. See circled adverbials above.
3. Some of the words the first writer uses to hedge claims are generally, fairly, often, and usually. The second writer uses in general and often.

Wrap-Up

A
Answers will vary.

B
Answers will vary.

C
Answers will vary.
Unit 6

Warm-Up

A
1. Knowledge is the most valuable treasure because it can't be stolen or consumed.  
2. Don't count your chickens before they hatch.  
3. When spider webs unite, they can tie up a lion.  
4. A snake will emit poison even though you feed it on milk.  
5. The eyes are of little use if the mind is blind.  
6. Make hay while the sun shines.  
7. Even though the old man is strong, he will not live forever.

B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>An adverb clause has a subject and a verb.</th>
<th>True</th>
<th>False</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adverb clauses always come at the end of a sentence.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An adverb clause is connected to another clause.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb clauses always begin with when or while.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C

adverb clause: unless you are planning to go that way

Activity 1: Noticing Adverb Clauses

Students will circle the subject and verb in Question 1.
Students will underline subordinators in Question 2.

Timeline of Vanessa-Mae’s Life

- age 3: had her first piano lesson
- age 5: started playing the violin
- age 8: won a prize in a piano competition, had to choose between piano and violin, decided to focus on violin
- age 12: had made three recordings of classical music, got an electric violin, started playing rock music

Like many famous musicians, Vanessa-Mae started playing music at a very young age. She was only 3 years old when she had her first piano lesson, and she started playing the violin when she was just 5. Then, at the age of 8, she had to make a difficult decision. She had to choose between the violin and the piano. Although she had just won a prize at an important piano competition, Vanessa-Mae decided to focus on the violin. Once she made her decision, she worked hard to improve her playing, and by the time she was 12, she had made three recordings of classical music. Although she loved classical music, she wanted to play other kinds of music, too. To many people’s surprise, she got an electric violin and started playing rock music. Today Vanessa-Mae is known as both a great classical violin musician and a great rock musician. That’s quite a combination.

QUESTIONS
3. Before the main clause: Although she had just won a prize at an important piano competition

Activity 2: Identifying Verb Forms

1. When I have spent a lot of time exercising, I sleep better at night. (present perfect/simple present)
2. When I was younger, I thought a lot about my future. (simple past/simple past)
3. My parents are important to me because they have always been my best friends. (simple present/present perfect)
4. Once I start something, I don’t stop until I’m done. (simple present/simple present/present present)
5. I try to stay completely focused while I’m studying. (simple present/present progressive)
6. My hometown has always been special to me because it’s so beautiful. (present perfect/simple present)
7. Once I’ve made a decision, I never change my mind. (present perfect/simple present)
8. I didn’t have any friends while I was growing up. (simple past/present progressive)
9. A year after I had finished high school, I started college. (past perfect/simple past)
10. Shortly after I moved here, I got a job. (simple past/simple past)
11. Although I worked hard yesterday, I don’t feel like working this morning. (simple past/present perfect)
12. I am applying to this college because my father attended the same school. (present progressive/simple past)

Think about It

Sentences 11 (simple past/simple present) and 12 (present progressive/simple past)

Activity 3: Noticing Adverb Clauses of Time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Good advice</th>
<th>Bad advice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Before you turn in an assignment, check it over carefully.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. It’s important to review your notes from class as soon as you get home.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Don’t study for a test until your instructor tells you to.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Take notes while you are reading assigned texts.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Study with a large group of classmates whenever you can.</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Ask to meet with your instructor whenever you are confused about the course material.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. As you read your class assignment, you should listen to loud music to help you think.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Elements of Success L3 Answer Key.indd   49

Once you are over 30, 35 years old, I think everyone should

1.

As you grow older you will discover that you have two hands:

Understanding Subordinators

Don't wait until you need to study for a test to read

11.

10.

10. Once you have read a text, don't look
at it again until you need to study for a test.

Write about it

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. Before you turn in an assignment, be sure to put your name
on it.

2. Make sure you organize your notes as soon as you get
home.

3. Don’t open the exam booklet until your instructor tells you to.

4. Sit in a quiet room while you are reading assigned texts.

5. Review your notes whenever you can.

6. Study with a friend whenever you are confused about
the course material.

7. As you read your class assignment, take notes in
the margins.

8. Write down questions when you don’t understand
something.

9. Turn the music down while you are studying.

10. Once you have read a text, take time to look through
your notes again before the test.

11. Don’t wait until you need to study for a test to read
the material.

Activity 4: Understanding Subordinators

1. As you grow older you will discover that you have two hands:
one for helping yourself, the other for helping others. (simple
present/future)

2. Whenever I crave junk food, I want salty things like peanuts
or potato chips. (simple present/simple present)

3. There’s only one way to have a happy marriage and as
soon as I learn what it is, I’ll get married again. (simple
present/future)

4. Once you are over 30, 35 years old, I think everyone should
got down to the gym and start moving again. (simple
present/simple present)

5. Life is what happens while you are busy making other plans. (simple
present/simple present)

6. I’ve now been in this country . . . since I was 17. So this is my
second home. (present perfect/simple past)

7. I still love making hamburgers on the grill. I guess whenever
I eat them, childhood memories come up for me. (simple
present/simple present)

8. Champions keep playing until they get it right. (simple
present/simple present)

9. When you do the common things in life in an uncommon
way, you will command the attention of the world. (simple
present/future)

10. As soon as I hear music, something in me starts to
vibrate. (simple present/simple present)

11. I could develop a picture by the time I was 12. (simple past/
simple past)

12. A lie gets halfway around the world before the truth has a
chance to get its pants on. (simple present/simple present)

QUESTIONS

1. Sentences 1, 2, 5, 7, and 9

3. Sentences 1, 3 and 9 (because they use a future verb form in
the main clause and a present verb form in the adverb clause)

Activity 5: Using Adverb Clauses of Time to Talk about the Future

1. When the economy improves, more people will have jobs.

2. It will be years before the economy becomes steady again.

3. I won’t get a job unless I am very lucky.

4. Most students will start at low salaries when they leave college.

5. When I graduate, I will get a job right away.

6. As soon as I finish school, I will apply for as many jobs as possible.

7. I won’t look for employment until I graduate from college.

8. We won’t get good jobs unless we learn new skills.

9. I will try to get some work experience while I am in school.

10. I will travel after I pass my final exams.

Write about it

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. When the economy improves, people will start taking
vacations overseas again.

2. Things will need to change a lot before the economy becomes
steady again.

3. I won’t get work experience this year unless I am very lucky.

4. Most students will not have a job when they leave college.

5. When I graduate, I will visit my sister in California.

6. As soon as I finish school, I will try to find a place to live.

7. I won’t have time to look for a job until I graduate from college.

8. We’ll have to take low-paying jobs unless we learn new skills.

9. I am going to study very hard while I am in school.

10. My parents will take me out to celebrate after I pass my
final exams.

Activity 6: Noticing Adverb Clauses of Reason

1. Avoid very cold drinks; they can cause stomach pain.

2. Don’t assume the heat won’t make you sick just because you
ever had a problem before.

3. Avoid high-protein foods; they increase body heat.

4. Don’t exercise in very hot, humid weather. Your body will sweat
because it is hot, but the sweat won’t evaporate because of the
high humidity.

5. Since you lose most of your body heat through your head, it’s
important to wear a hat in cold weather.

6. Wearing layers of clothing helps keep you warm because your
body heat gets trapped between the layers.

7. Don’t wear tight shoes or boots; they increase your chances
of getting frostbite.

8. Be especially careful on cold, windy days because the wind can
carry heat away from the body.

Think about It

Sentence 5 has a comma after the adverb clause, because it comes
before the main clause.

Activity 7: Identifying Subordinators

1. Because the cost of living has gone up, many people are
working longer hours.
2. More people are working during their vacations now that they have access to the Internet.
3. Since more people are watching TV, the programs are getting better.
4. It's easier to do research now because there is so much information on the Internet.
5. Now that people can do research on the Internet, they don't go to the library as often.
6. People are driving less now that the price of gasoline has gone up.
7. Because there are so many cars on the road, driving has become more dangerous.
8. There is no real need to go shopping in stores as one can buy almost anything online.
9. Since it's easy to travel almost anywhere in the world, there are few unspoiled places left.
10. Now that smoking is illegal in many public places, more people will probably quit smoking.
11. Since fewer people are smoking, deaths from lung cancer should go down.
12. Because people are living longer, it's even more important for them to have health insurance.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Because the cost of living has gone up, fewer people are traveling overseas.
2. More people do their shopping online now that they have access to the Internet.
3. Since more people are watching TV, there are more programs to choose from.
4. It's easier for me to do my homework now because there is so much information on the Internet.
5. Now that people can do research on the Internet, they don't buy as many reference books.
6. People are buying cars with better gas mileage now that the price of gasoline has gone up.
7. Because there are so many cars on the road, it takes longer to go anywhere.
8. My brother asks why anyone ever leaves the house as one can buy almost anything online.
9. Since it's easy to travel almost anywhere in the world, more people go overseas on vacation.
10. Now that smoking is illegal in many public places, the workers there are probably healthier.
11. Since fewer people are smoking, more people should live longer.
12. Because people are living longer, they have to work until they're older.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Since I've downloaded Skype, I almost never use my telephone.
2. Just talk to people online.
3. Because computers are so inexpensive, almost everyone I know has one.
4. Now that I can buy clothes online, I almost never go to department stores.

Activity 9: Adverb Clause of Time or Reason?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time Clause</th>
<th>Reason Clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. “If you look at the course syllabus, you’ll notice that I’ve marked three items in blue. These are the things I’m going to emphasize as we go through the course.”</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. These are the things I’m going to emphasize when we go through the course.
2. I’d like to show you some pictures of the poet T. S. Eliot because I’m going to be talking about him in today’s lecture.
3. While I was reading through your papers, I noticed that some of you had trouble understanding a few of the concepts we discussed last week.
4. There are several things you need to remember as we move forward in our study of basic chemistry. I’m going to post these online for you to refer to.
5. “I’m going to read the poem to you in class since some of you weren’t able to get the packet of class materials from the bookstore.”
6. “As the semester goes on, I’ll go into more detail about different styles of architecture.”
7. “There have been several new developments in the field since we last met, and I’ll be discussing these over the next few weeks.”
8. “I can’t tell you exactly when the final exam will be because the department hasn’t made the schedule yet. But I’ll let you know soon.”
9. “Since I published my research paper on animal extinction, there’s been a lot of interest in the subject.”
10. “As none of you will be here next semester, we’ll end this course with a review of European economics.”

Activity 10: Exploring Ways to Give Reasons
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. We couldn't understand him because he had a strong accent.
2. My brother missed his flight because his car broke down.
3. I couldn't get to class since the weather was bad.
4. I didn't exercise because it was so hot out.
5. I can't go out this weekend as I don't have any money.
6. I can't email my family since I don't have a computer.
7. I couldn't go away for the weekend because I had to work.
8. We don't see her very often because she works so much.
9. I couldn't do my homework because of the problems with my computer.
10. I had soccer practice, so I couldn't do my homework.
11. I couldn't come to class last week. I was out of town.
12. I didn't finish my homework, so I had to stay home.

Activity 11: Error Correction
1. It's hard to compare schools in the United States and Mexico because my country has a different educational system.
2. I did not do very well on the examination because if I did not read the instructions carefully.
3. Since you weren't here yesterday, you didn't get the assignment.
4. I couldn't sleep last night because I was worrying about the test.
5. Now that I have some money, I'm going to take a vacation.
6. When I arrived here, I was happy because my sister was here and I hadn't seen her in a long time. At the same time, I was sad because I left my friends behind and I knew I would miss them.
7. I'm proud of myself because now I can communicate with people in English, I have a good job, and I'm going to start college soon.
8. My parents always encouraged me to make my own decisions. This was very important to me because it made me trust myself.
9. I thought my parents would come here until the day my father called me.
10. After I left my country, I moved to Germany. While I was living there, I studied at a university.
11. I want to go back home for as long as I can.
12. When I will get older, I will look back at this time and laugh.
13. After they finished eating, they went to the bride's house. At noon all my friends arrived. As soon as they arrived, they started to decorate my apartment. They finished at 5:00.
15. Because my country, Cambodia, has a very different educational system.

Activity 12: Noticing Adverb Clauses of Contrast
1. What university did George Washington attend? 
   - d
2. How many children did George Washington have? 
   - b
3. Did George Washington wear a wig? 
   - a
4. Is George Washington buried under the U.S. Capitol? 
   - c
   a. No, he didn't. Even though wigs were fashionable, Washington didn't wear one. Instead, he powdered his hair. (simple past/simple past)
   b. None. George Washington had no children of his own although he helped raise two of his wife's children from her first marriage. (simple past/simple past)
   c. No, he isn't. Although Congress built a room under the Capitol Building for this purpose, Washington is not buried in it. (simple past/simple present passive)
   d. He did not attend college. Although Washington believed strongly in formal education, the death of his father ended his formal schooling. (simple past/simple past)

1. Did Christopher Columbus discover America? 
   - d
2. Where was Columbus trying to go in 1502? 
   - c
3. Did Columbus sail in very large ships? 
   - b
4. Was Christopher Columbus married? 
   - a
   a. Yes, he was. Although no one writes about her often, Columbus had a wife named Filipa Perestrelo, a Portuguese lady. Their wedding was on the Portuguese island of Porto Santo in 1479. (simple present/simple past)
   b. No, he didn't. Columbus's biggest ship, the Santa Maria, sailed across the Atlantic Ocean although it was only 70 feet long and not designed for exploration. (simple past/simple past)
   c. In 1502, Columbus sailed to America for the fourth time and exploited Central America although he was still hoping to land in China! (simple past/past progressive)
   d. Although people have said Columbus discovered America, this isn't in fact true. There were many people living there already, but of course, Columbus didn't know that. (present perfect/simple present)

1. What did Mozart call himself? 
   - d
2. Was Mozart very rich? 
   - b
3. What sort of music did Mozart compose? 
   - c
4. How old was Mozart when he began to compose? 
   - a
   a. Even though it's hard to believe, Mozart was only eight years old when he composed his first symphony. (simple present/simple past)
   b. No, he wasn't. Although he was very famous, Mozart was extremely poor when he died in 1791. His grave didn't even have a stone on it. (simple past/simple past)
   c. (Although) Mozart is often remembered for writing cheerful music and funny operas, not all his music was happy. He also wrote serious music and even funeral music. (simple present passive/simple past)
   d. Mozart's official name was Joannes Chrysostomus Wolfgangus Theophilus although he called himself Gottlieb until 1769. Then he began to call himself Amadeo. (simple past/simple past)

Activity 13: Using Adverb Clauses of Contrast
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I got up early this morning even though I didn't have to.
2. Although I don't like coffee, I drank several cups of it.
3. Although I like to drive to work, I usually take the bus.
4. Although I got caught in traffic, I still got to work on time.
5. I worked all day even though I finished my work before lunch.
6. I didn't eat lunch even though I was really hungry.
7. Although I was very tired, I stayed up late watching TV.
8. Though it seemed like a bad idea, I ate the old food in the refrigerator.
9. I never learned to drive a car even though it would have been really helpful in college.
10. I finished the assignment late although I had plenty of time.

Activity 14: Using While in Contrast Clauses
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. While the number of programs on TV is increasing, their quality is not getting better.
2. While many parents don't want their children to watch a lot of TV, some parents let their children watch all of the time.
3. Some of the news programs on TV are OK while others aren't worth watching.
4. While some people prefer news programs while others watch reality TV.
5. While many people admit that they watch too much TV, not many people do anything about it.
6. While TV is still a popular source of news, the Internet is becoming more popular.
7. While TV can be beneficial for adults, it can also be harmful for children.
8. While many TV channels show only sports programs, others show only educational programs.
Think about It
Sentences that use while to contrast two aspects of the same thing: 1, 7
Sentences that use while to make a direct contrast between two different things: 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8

Activity 16: Understanding Clauses with While

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Clause</th>
<th>Contrast</th>
<th>Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>While this disease can be deadly in humans and animals, it is treatable.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>While people are being treated for the disease, they need constant care.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>While animals can get this disease, people cannot.</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>While the river is being cleaned up, swimming will not be allowed.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>While the river is being cleaned up, the surrounding area is not.</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>While it would be wonderful to clean up the river, it is unlikely to happen.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>We couldn’t see or hear anything while we were swimming across the river.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>While it can be challenging to swim across the river, it can be done.</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Several protestors had to be taken from the room while the president was giving her speech.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>While the president’s speech was informative, she didn’t address several important issues.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>While it would be nice to think that we don’t need this law, we do.</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>The crime rate went down while the law was in effect.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>While the law was effective, it was very unpopular.</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 18: Noticing Contrasting Words

1. Even though she’s older, she’s not really any wiser.
2. While it may help to take vitamins, it’s not absolutely necessary.
3. Someday I may want to move although I doubt it.
4. Even though I can understand Spanish, I can’t speak it.
5. He was kind to me even though I didn’t deserve it.
6. I live a quiet life although I’m really a city person.
7. I respect your decision even though I don’t like it.
8. Although some bacteria are harmful, the vast majority of bacteria are harmless.
9. I respect your decision even though I don’t like it.
10. While the law was effective, it was very unpopular.

Activity 19: Exploring Different Ways to Contrast Ideas

1. Despite looking like a tree, bamboo is actually a grass.
2. While most people think water always boils at 212 degrees Fahrenheit, this only happens at sea level.
3. Although some bacteria are harmful, the vast majority of bacteria are harmless.
4. While some deserts are hot, dry places, others are cold and ice-covered.
5. Even though the earth is slightly flat at the poles, we say it is round.
6. Although the banana plant looks like a tree, it is actually a very large herb.
7. Even though there were distractions, the researchers were able to focus on their work.
8. While ants are extremely small, they are very strong insects.

Activity 20: Error Correction

1. Because she is a good wife, we are a happy family.
2. I don’t know much about U.S. history although I took several courses.
3. Even though they look very different, they have similar personalities.
4. Even though I was a good student, but I couldn’t get a scholarship.
5. Although I had heard that word many times, so it sounded strange to me.
6. Although it wasn’t an old car, it didn’t run very well.
7. He is very generous even though he doesn’t have much money.
8. My family lives in a small house near Seattle, Washington. Even though the house has only three rooms, we never feel crowded.

Activity 21: Distinguishing Types of Adverb Clauses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Clause</th>
<th>Manner</th>
<th>Reason</th>
<th>Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>My mother runs her house as you would run a hotel.</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>My sister always gets up just as the coffee is ready.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>My father has a good pension as he worked many years for the government.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>He recited the poem perfectly as he always does.</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>She raised herself on her elbows as she stared into the night.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>As I have said before, I’ll be leaving early tonight.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Activity 23: Using Adverb Clauses of Purpose

In picture 8, the family looks as though they are going to have a good time.
In picture 7, the woman looks as if she feels pretty cold.
In picture 6, the woman looks as if she has a lot to do.
In picture 5, the man looks as though he is happy to be there.
In picture 4, the woman looks as if she is really surprised.
In picture 2, the man looks as though he is very relaxed.
In picture 1, the woman looks as though she is in a hurry.

Activity 22: Using Adverb Clauses of Manner

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
In picture 1, the woman looks as though she is in a hurry.
In picture 2, the man looks as though he is very relaxed.
In picture 3, the woman looks as if she is very confused about something.
In picture 4, the woman looks as if she is really surprised.
In picture 5, the man looks as though he is happy to be there.
In picture 6, the woman looks as if she has a lot to do.
In picture 7, the woman looks as if she feels pretty cold.
In picture 8, the family looks as though they are going to have a good time.

Activity 25: Using Adverb Clauses of Result

1. I'm studying so hard that I'm sure to do well in this course.
2. She has such a strong accent that I can hardly understand her.
3. I have so little money that I can't afford to buy a car.
4. He was feeling so ill that he went home.
5. She took such good care of her car that it looks new.
6. He was so grateful that he couldn't stop thanking me.
7. The flowers in the garden were so pretty that I wanted to pick them.
8. It happened such a long time ago that she can't remember the details.
9. I was so late for class that I took a taxi.
10. It was such a beautiful day that I didn't want to think about my problems.

Activity 26: Analyzing Adverb Clauses

When digital audio players (DAPs) first appeared in the 1990s, they weren't very popular. In 2000, Apple realized that customers were not interested in DAPs because the players weren't designed well. Apple soon developed a new product: the iPod. It was attractive and had a fast computer connection so that songs could quickly transfer from a computer to the player. Since Apple released the first iPod in 2001, it has released many different versions. Most iPods now have touch screens so you can play videos. Others are so small that they can fit in your hand. Apple has also developed similar products, such as the iPhone and the iPad. Because of their excellent design, these products are some of the most popular devices for mobile communication and entertainment.

QUESTIONS
1. six
2. one (so small that they can fit in your hand)
3. one (so that songs could quickly transfer from a computer to the player)
4. (see circled text above)
5. It has a fast computer connection, it’s easy to use, and it’s attractive.

Activity 27: Analyzing Reduced Clauses of Time and Contrast
✓ 1. Although my sister was tired, she refused to stop working.
✓ 2. Lots of people listen to the radio while they are driving.
✓ 3. They left the room before we announced the good news.
✓ 4. Brothers and sisters share a lot of experiences while they are growing up.
✓ 5. I always feel good after I exercise outdoors.
✓ 6. Although this method is complicated, it is highly reliable.
✓ 7. Although the directions were written simply, they were difficult to follow.
✓ 8. After the committee members discussed the issues, they made a final decision.
✓ 9. Although the engine was new, we couldn’t get it started.
✓ 10. Although this issue is important, we aren’t ready to make a decision.
✓ 11. Though the findings are based on only a few studies, they are very promising.
✓ 12. You should think about your career goals before you apply to a college or university.
✓ 13. Since Joe and I started to eat more healthily, we’ve both felt fitter and better.
✓ 14. We aren’t allowed to use our cell phones while we are at work.
✓ 15. When I think about the future, I see myself changing careers completely.

Write about It
1. Although tired, my sister refused to stop working.
2. Lots of people listen to the radio while driving.
3. Brothers and sisters share a lot of experiences while growing up.
4. I always feel good after exercising outdoors.
5. Although complicated, this method is highly reliable.
6. Although written simply, the directions were difficult to follow.
7. After discussing the issues, the committee members made a final decision.
8. Though based on only a few studies, the findings are very promising.
9. You should think about your career goals before applying to a college or university.
10. Since starting to eat more healthily, Joe and I have both felt fitter and better.
11. We aren’t allowed to use our cell phones while at work.
12. When I think about the future, I see myself changing careers completely.

Activity 28: Using Reduced Clauses
1. When you travel with children, you should carry plenty of water and snacks.
   When traveling with children, you should carry plenty of water and snacks.
2. When you pack your suitcase, you should roll your clothes instead of folding them.
   When packing your suitcase, you should roll your clothes instead of folding them.
3. When you carry your own luggage on an airplane, it is less likely to get lost.
4. Although checked luggage rarely gets lost, you should put extra clothes in your carry-on luggage.
5. (You) Make sure your flight is on time before you leave for the airport.
   Make sure your flight is on time before leaving for the airport.
6. When you go through airport security, you take your computer out of your carry-on bag.
   When going through airport security, take your computer out of your carry-on bag.
7. Most passengers have to take off their shoes when they go through airport security.
   Most passengers have to take off their shoes when going through airport security.
8. When people are on an airplane for a long time, they should do foot and leg exercises.
   When on an airplane for a long time, people should do foot and leg exercises.
9. You have to have a passport when you travel to a foreign country.
   You have to have a passport when traveling to a foreign country.
10. When you visit a foreign country, you follow the customs of that country.
    When visiting a foreign country, follow the customs of that country.
11. Hotel rates are often cheaper when you travel with a large group of people.
12. (You) Take a small dictionary with you when you are traveling to a foreign country.
    Take a small dictionary with you when traveling to a foreign country.

Write about It
When traveling to a foreign country, make sure to pack plug adapters so you can use your computer and other electronic equipment.

Activity 29: Noticing Conditional Clauses
1. You skip one credit card bill to pay another.
   Skipping payment of one credit card bill to pay another is unwise. If you usually find yourself unable to make your credit card payments, you are already in trouble.
2. You charge more than you pay.
   Imagine trying to fill a hole while someone digs out more dirt than you put in. The hole would never get filled, would it? It’s the same with credit card debt. If you’re charging more than you’re paying, your debt will always continue to increase.
3. You don’t have a plan to pay off your credit card debt.
   “Failing to plan is planning to fail.” If you’re not actively working to pay off your credit card bill, you could end up paying for years to come.
4. You use credit to “afford” expensive items.
   Credit cards trick us into thinking we can afford to buy more than we really can. You are endangering your future income if you’re getting into debt to have a lifestyle you really can’t afford.
5. You have reached the limit on your credit cards.
   If your credit cards are maxed out, you’re not headed for credit card debt; you’re already in it. What can you do? Make a decision to pay off your credit card debt and to make wiser choices when you use your credit cards in the future.
In Spanish, if you know how a word is spelled, you almost always know how it is pronounced.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]

If you can speak two languages fluently, you are bilingual.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]

Any language is in trouble if it is spoken by only a few people.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]

If both parents have poor eyesight, their children will, too.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]

If both parents have blue eyes, they usually won't have a child with brown eyes.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]

You will live longer if you exercise frequently.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]

You will catch a cold if you go outside in cold weather with a wet head.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]

You will get smarter if you eat a lot of fish.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]

You will drown if you go swimming after a big meal.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]

Activity 33: Unless or If?
1. Generally I can sleep anytime, anywhere, anyplace, unless I'm anxious about work.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
2. If you dream it, you can do it.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
3. Fishing is boring unless you catch an actual fish, and then (if you do) it is disgusting.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
4. If you can't explain it simply, you don't understand it well enough.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
5. You can't push anyone up the ladder unless he is willing to climb.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
6. Mistakes are always forgivable if one has the courage to admit them.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
7. If you don't practice, you don't deserve to win.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
8. Unless we remember, we cannot understand.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
9. You may be deceived if you trust too much.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
10. Nothing will work unless you do.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]

Write about It
1. Generally I can sleep anytime, anywhere, anyplace, if I'm not anxious about work.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
2. Fishing is boring if you catch an actual fish, and then (if you do) it is disgusting.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
3. You would have been disappointed if I hadn't come.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
4. If you had listened to me, we wouldn't have gotten lost.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
5. I'd laugh if I weren't so tired.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
6. You wasted a lot of time.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
7. There is gravity.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
8. I am very tired.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
9. If he had the skills to work, he would be able to find a job.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
10. You would have been disappointed if I hadn't come.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
11. If I had known you were coming, I would have cooked something special.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
12. If you hadn't wasted so much time, you'd be finished by now.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
13. If you dream it, you can do it.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
14. You would have been disappointed if I hadn't come.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]
15. Your essay would be better if it had a more interesting introduction.\[\text{Fact} \big/ \text{Myth}\]

Think about It
Think about It
Fact or general truth: 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9, 10
Event that happened regularly in the past: 3, 8

Activity 31: Using If: Clauses in Predictions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>Fact</th>
<th>Myth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you usually find yourself unable to make your credit card payments</td>
<td>unable to make your credit card payments</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you're charging more than you're paying</td>
<td>your debt will always continue to increase</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you're not actively working to pay off your credit card bill</td>
<td>you could end up paying for years to come</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you're getting into debt to have a lifestyle you really can't afford</td>
<td>you are endangering your future income</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your credit cards are maxed out</td>
<td>you're not headed for credit card debt; you're already in it</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 34: Identifying Uses of Unreal Conditionals
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. If I had known you were coming, I would have cooked something special.
2. If the ice at both the North and South Poles melted, the seas would rise by over 70 meters.
3. If you hadn't wasted so much time, you'd be finished by now.
4. If he had the skills to work, he would be able to find a job.
5. If you dream it, you can do it.
6. You would have been disappointed if I hadn't come.
7. If you dream it, you can do it.
8. If you had listened to me, we wouldn't have gotten lost.
9. You wasted a lot of time.
10. Unless we remember, we cannot understand.

Think about It
Think about It
Fact or general truth: 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9, 10
Event that happened regularly in the past: 3, 8

You will cross your eyes, they will stay that way.
You will eat a lot of carrots, you will have good eyesight.
You will live longer if you exercise frequently.
You will catch a cold if you go outside in cold weather with a wet head.
You will get smarter if you eat a lot of fish.
You will drown if you go swimming after a big meal.
You will catch a cold if you catch an actual fish, and then (if you do) it is disgusting.
You would have been disappointed if I hadn't come.
8. He doesn't have the skills to work.
9. You didn't listen to me.
10. She didn't know the ice was thin.
11. I didn't tell you the truth.
12. I did come.
13. You didn't get up earlier.
14. I don't have health insurance.
15. It doesn't have an interesting introduction.

Activity 35: Talking about Unreal Situations

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. If I won a lot of money, I would share it with my friends.
2. If I were the leader of my country, I would change the tax system.
3. If everyone could speak the same language, we wouldn't need translators anymore.
4. If there were fewer people in the world, our cities wouldn't be so crowded.
5. If I could choose my dream job, I would be the president of a company.
6. If we were at the beach, we could go surfing.
7. If you didn't have any water to drink, you probably wouldn't live for more than a few days.
8. If I had more free time, I would learn a new sport.
9. If I could take tomorrow off, I would go on a long hike.
10. If I had a good boss, my job would be great.

Think about it
1. simple past/modal (future)
2. simple past/modal (present)
3. modal/modal (present)
4. simple past/modal (present)
5. modal/modal (future)
6. simple past/modal (present)
7. simple past/modal (future)
8. simple past/modal (future)
9. modal/modal (future)
10. simple past/modal (present)

Write about It
1. If I won a lot of money, I'd quit my job.
2. If I were the leader of my country, I would try to end poverty.
3. If everyone could speak the same language, many languages would probably become extinct.
4. If there were fewer people in the world, there would probably be less hunger.
5. If I could choose my dream job, I'd be a rock star!
6. If we were at the beach, we could play in the waves.
7. If you didn't have any water to drink, you would be very thirsty.
8. If I had more free time, I'd learn how to knit.
9. If I could take tomorrow off, I'd go see a movie.
10. If I had a good boss, I'd probably work harder.

Activity 36: Identifying the Time Frame

1. a. If we hadn't learned how to use electricity, we might still be using candles at night. (present)
   b. If we hadn't learned how to use electricity, computers couldn't have been invented. (past)
2. a. If I hadn't lost my job, I would be able to afford a new car. (present)
   b. If I hadn't lost my job, I wouldn't be able to travel with my family next week. (future)
3. a. If he hadn't been wearing his seat belt, he wouldn't have survived the crash. (past)
   b. If he hadn't been wearing his seat belt, he wouldn't be alive today. (present)
4. a. If she hadn't spent so much money, she could have afforded a new car. (past)
   b. If she hadn't spent so much money, she would still have some money in the bank. (present)
5. a. If the earth didn't rotate, there would always be daylight on one side of it. (present)
   b. If the earth didn't rotate, there would be very little life. (present)
6. a. If I didn't have to work, I would have gone shopping this morning. (past)
   b. If I didn't have to work, I'd feel a lot more relaxed. (present)
7. a. If my brother had become a lawyer, he'd probably be working at a law firm. (present)
   b. If my brother had become a lawyer, he wouldn't have been very happy. (past)
8. a. If our city wasn't so expensive, I'd buy a bigger house next year. (future)
   b. If our city wasn't so expensive, I would have moved into a bigger apartment. (past)

Write about it
1. If we hadn't learned how to use electricity, our world would be very different. (present)
2. If I hadn't lost my job, I wouldn't be able to go to the park all day tomorrow. (future)
3. If he hadn't been wearing his seat belt, he could have been hurt very badly. (past)
4. If she hadn't spent so much money, she wouldn't be asking me for a loan. (present)
5. If the earth didn't rotate, the climate would be very different. (present)
6. If I didn't have to work, I would have gone on a hike this morning. (past)
7. If my brother had become a lawyer, he would have spent three more years in school. (past)
8. If our city wasn't so expensive, I wouldn't have to live with a roommate. (present)

Activity 38: Identifying Real and Unreal Conditionals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Real</th>
<th>Unreal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. She was so thin. She looked as though she hadn't eaten for weeks. 

5. He was walking as though he'd hurt himself.

6. Her eyes were very wide, and she looked as though she'd had a terrible scare.

7. He looked very red, as if he'd been out in the sun for hours.

8. I remember my graduation day as if it were yesterday.

9. This isn't a big problem but she feels as if it were enormous.

10. They spoke in low voices as if they were in the library.

11. He bent down suddenly as if he were going to pick up something.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. I asked her to stop, but she went ahead as if I wasn't there.

2. There is a photograph on his desk; it looks as though it's of his family.

3. He looked around and leaned toward me as if we were close friends.

4. She was so thin. She looked as if she needed a good meal.

5. He was walking as if he had a long way to go.

6. Her eyes were very wide, and she looked as though she wanted to run away.

7. He looked very red, as if someone had embarrassed him.

8. I remember my graduation day as though it had just happened.

9. This isn't a big problem but she feels as though it's her fault.

10. They spoke in low voices as if they didn't want to be overheard.

11. He bent down suddenly as if he'd dropped something.

   a. He beckoned me over as though he wanted to tell me a secret.

   b. They were surrounded by so many books it looked as if they were in the library.

   c. He sat down on the soccer field as though he'd hurt himself.

   d. He looked hot and sweaty, as if he'd been out in the sun for hours.

   e. The clothes they wore in the photo were old, as if it were taken in the 1950s.

   f. She put so much food on her plate it looked as though she hadn't eaten for weeks.

   g. She wanted to run away.

   h. It wasn't a big spider but she felt as if it were enormous.

   i. He stopped and looked at the ground as if he were going to pick up something.

   j. I remember my first day of school as if it were yesterday.

   k. She was breathing heavily, as though she'd had a terrible scare.

Activity 41: Error Correction

1. As if She had all that she needed.

2. If I knew more about grammar, I wouldn't make so many mistakes.

3. If this had happened in my country, he would have gone to jail.

4. If nobody had told me to get glasses, I would not be close friends.

5. If you ever go to California, you should go to Los Angeles.

6. If you don't wear a uniform, you can't go to this school.

7. If you want to buy something, you can probably order it on the Internet.

8. If you didn't have self-confidence, you can't lead other people.

9. If you didn't have self-confidence, you can't lead other people.

10. If my parents had been here, I wouldn't have learned the language so quickly.

11. Her business wouldn't have been successful if I hadn't supported her.
Activity 42: Using Real Conditionals in Conversation
1. A: Why do we have to spend so much money?  
B: We can talk about it. (pause) If you want.  
A: I don't think there's anything to talk about. (pause) Because we can't really afford it.
2. A: How long have you lived here?  
B: Since I was 13.
3. A: How are you doing?  
B: Since the last time we talked? (pause) I don't know. Could be better.
4. A: How did you know Amanda was lying?  
B: Because she wouldn't look at me.
5. A: Do you think I should drive or take the train?  
B: Take the train. Definitely take the train.  
A: OK, if you think I should.  
B: I do. I really do.
6. A: This is a great place for a vacation.  
B: I told you it was.  
A: I know but I was hoping I wouldn't enjoy it. You know why?  
B: Because you're crazy?
7. A: I'm getting bored! When can we go?  
B: Whenever you're ready.
8. A: I have something to tell you about James. (pause) If you're interested.  
B: Of course I am! What is it?
9. A: Can we have pizza for dinner again tonight?  
B: I suppose so. If you insist.

Activity 43: Using Real Conditionals in Conversation
1. A: I just can't do this math problem.  
B: Come on. If you stick with it, you'll figure it out.  
A: I'll drive you to Chicago if you pay for the gas.  
B: That seems reasonable. You're on!
2. A: If you could just listen for a minute, I'll explain.  
B: Sure. I'm sorry. Go ahead.
3. A: I'm just nervous. I'm afraid I'm going to forget everything.  
B: Not if you stay relaxed.
4. A: Sounds good to me.
5. A: What time do you want to leave?  
B: Not if you stay relaxed.
6. A: I'm just nervous. I'm afraid I'm going to forget everything.  
B: What if I pick you up at eight?
7. A: Sounds good to me.
8. A: I told you it was.  
B: I know but I was hoping I wouldn't enjoy it. You know why?
9. A: Since the last time we talked?  
B: And then I'll tell Dad about the scratch on the car.
10. A: I suppose so. If you insist.

Activity 44: Softening a Request or Statement
1. A: Do you mind if I turn down the music?  
B: No, please, go ahead.
2. A: Anna seems really distracted and I don't know why.  
B: If you want, I can talk to her.
3. A: I'm leaving for the bank.  
B: OK if I come along?
4. A: I'm going to study here if I'm not in your way.  
B: No, please.
5. A: If you'll excuse me, I have to make a phone call.  
B: Talk to you later, then.
6. A: I don't think I want to work tonight.  
B: Look, if you're not up for it, that's OK.
7. A: This is delicious.  
B: Thanks. You could have a little more, if you want.
8. A: If I may have a word, Mr. Jones . . .  
B: Please, Tom, come in, come in.
9. A: Hey! Let's go see a movie.  
B: Hmm. If you don't mind, could we get some food instead? I haven't eaten.
10. A: If you have a moment, I'd like to talk to you.  
B: Sure. How can I help?
Elements of Success L3 Answer Key.indd   59

**Write about It**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

1. Drink a cup of herbal tea to help you relax before you go to bed.
2. Try to go to bed at the same time every night so that your body develops a rhythm.

**Activity 47: Combining Ideas**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

1. I don’t drink coffee in the evening because it interferes with my sleep. Because coffee interferes with my sleep, I don’t drink it in the evening.
2. When Hassan came to the U.S., he began studying automotive engineering. Hassan began studying automotive engineering after he came to the U.S.
3. People are better off now than they used to be because they don’t have to spend so much time preparing food. Because people don’t have to spend so much time preparing food, they are better off now than they used to be.
4. Clara Jbour’s parents sent her to the U.S. to attend college after she graduated from high school. When Clara Jbour graduated from high school, her parents sent her to the U.S. to attend college.
5. Parents may need coaching in parenting skills since they are not teaching their children correct behavior. Because parents are not teaching their children correct behavior, they may need coaching in parenting skills.
6. If you maintain a healthy lifestyle, you are less likely to get sick. You are less likely to get sick if you maintain a healthy lifestyle.
7. Since he works as a wildlife photographer, Cody Huelskamp has traveled to 70 countries. Cody Huelskamp has traveled to 70 countries because he works as a wildlife photographer.
8. I missed most of the movie because I was worrying about my job. Since I was worrying about my job, I missed most of the movie.
9. Although I love sweets, I try not to eat candy. I try not to eat candy even though I love sweets.
10. Since many mothers work outside of the home, fathers must share the responsibilities of running a house. Fathers must share the responsibilities of running a house because many mothers work outside of the home.
11. Since he continued to play football, his knee got worse. His knee got worse because he continued to play football.
12. Since roughly 36 percent of New Yorkers were born outside of the U.S., it’s very common to hear people speaking different languages. It’s very common to hear people speaking different languages because roughly 36 percent of New Yorkers were born outside of the U.S.

**Activity 48: Using Subordinators**

**Students will circle sentences beginning with adverb clauses in the Think about it activity.**

**When summer comes, I get sun crazy.** I like to eat on the patio and lie on the beach. I walk and bike everywhere. **When I was younger, I played in the sun without worry.** Now that I’m 30, I realize how important it is to protect myself. That’s because the ultraviolet (UV) rays from the sun harm the cells in our skin. You can’t see the damage when you’re young, but its effects often show up much later. **As crowds of young people go to beaches and tanning salons, skin cancer is becoming more common, says Mandeep Kauf.** She’s a dermatologist, or skin doctor, at Wake Forest University School of Medicine. **(Although our skin works hard to protect us, few people work to protect it.)** The sun’s UV rays are the biggest threat because they damage the cells of your skin. The tricky thing is that this process can take 30 or more years to become evident. “It’s surprising how long it takes,” says Meenhard Herlyn, a biologist at the Wistar Institute in Philadelphia. “Even if kids have big, blistering sunburns every summer, they’re fine while they’re kids.”

**Think about it**

To set the scene for the following ideas: paragraph 1, sentences 1, 4, 5; paragraph 2, sentence 1
To make a connection back to information in a previous sentence: paragraph 1, sentence 8

**Activity 49: Using Adverb Clauses**

When I was about four, or maybe five, my parents bought a new house in what would later become a small suburb of Nogales, Arizona, on the border of Mexico, some four miles outside town. As we kept driving out to watch the house being built, my mother got to make a number of choices regarding details, among which was the color of various rooms.

My mother, when asked what color she wanted the kitchen, said to the workers, who were all Mexican and who spoke very little English, limón. She said it both because she wanted the kitchen to be yellow and because she wanted to start learning Spanish. The workers nodded yes. But when she came back the next day, the kitchen was painted bright green, like a small jungle. Mexican limones, my mother found out, are small and green, that color exactly, no mistake.

So that’s the color that wall stayed for the next 14 years, until I left home for college. She said it was a reminder to us all that there was a great deal to learn in the world. You might laugh at first, but after 14 years you start to think about it.

**QUESTIONS**

1. In all of the sentences that contain adverb clauses.
2. In those sentences where they appear at the beginning of the sentence.
3. Since or because.
4. Answers will vary.

**Activity 50: Making Your Writing Cohesive**

1. Americans should be required to learn another language. Because we live in an increasingly multicultural society, this will benefit them in the future.
2. Many people around the world are learning to speak English as a second language. If more Americans learned to speak foreign languages, communication would be even better.
3. Yoga improves your flexibility. Also, if you do classes, it is a great way to meet people.
4. My favorite pastime is rock climbing. I enjoy it because it is something I can do inside or outside.
5. In the U.S., children must be vaccinated against certain diseases. They must receive vaccinations before they can start school.
6. Competition can be very good for children. It is only a problem when too much emphasis is placed on it.
7. In many families, both parents have full-time jobs. This can create problems at home. When neither parent can be at home, children have to spend all day at school or daycare.
8. Brothers and sisters spend a lot of time together. They help each other and take care of each other. Because they share so many experiences while growing up, they understand each other very well.
9. People like to read essays that are well organized and interesting. If you organize your essay well, readers will be able to follow your ideas easily.

10. Having children is very stressful and time-consuming, but the job can be easier if parents are patient with their children.

11. Every home should have a pair of small, foldable scissors. Because they fold up and are very small, they fit easily in a purse or pocket.

12. The writer Chinua Achebe was born in Nigeria. He chose to write in English even though he was African.

13. Plastic bags in the ocean are dangerous for sea turtles. Because the bags look like jellyfish, the sea turtles try to eat the bags.

14. A report concluded that 100,000 ocean mammals die each year by eating or getting caught in plastic. They may drown or become exhausted and die of starvation when they get caught up in plastic.

15. In the 1970s, there was just one Pinta tortoise in the Galapagos Islands. Because it was the last remaining Pinta tortoise that scientists knew of, the Guinness Book of World Records called it the "rarest living creature."

16. In the past, people brought goats to the Galapagos to raise for food. Unfortunately, the goats liked to eat the same food that the tortoises ate. As the number of goats on the island increased, the food supply for tortoises disappeared.

Activity 51: Making Your Writing Cohesive

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

A
Because I spend a lot of time on the road, I've seen a lot of stupid behavior. Even though I could list at least 15 driving pet peeves, I'll limit myself to two. When people forget to turn off their turn signal, it really bothers me. I hate to drive for miles behind someone with a flashing turn signal because it's very distracting. Second, when people sometimes flash their headlights, it's really irritating. I don't understand why people get so impatient.

B
One of my biggest pet peeves is irritating cell phone users. Many people talk very loudly on their phone so that you can hear everything they say. This is very annoying when you are trying to read or to talk to someone else and you can't. It also bothers me when people always answer their phone when you are having a conversation with them. This is extremely rude.

Wrap-Up

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

A
I chose the third picture. When the main character goes out into the ocean, a big storm begins. If the boy can't reach the shore before night, he'll be in a lot of danger. As soon as he realizes that his life is in danger, he starts to panic.

B
Answers will vary.

C
I completely disagree with the first piece of advice. If you have crazy dreams, you're probably not going to achieve them. Although it may seem like a good idea to have dreams, it can be hard to make them come true. Instead, you should set yourself easier goals so that you succeed. Even if you think that's unambitious, it's a good idea to think about it. For example, if you wanted to become a famous detective, you'd still have to learn the job. You can't become famous until you've proved you're good.

D
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
As soon as you get off the plane in Belgium, you'll start feeling hungry! Before you start visiting the main tourist sites, be sure to get a good lunch in the town square. If you like mussels, you're sure to love Brussels!
Unit 7

Warm-Up

A
1. Everything has its beauty, but not everyone sees it.
2. Children are our most valuable natural resource.
3. Criticize a friend in private, but praise him in front of others.
4. It is not enough to have a good mind; the main thing is to use it well.
5. An angry man opens his mouth and shuts his eyes.
6. One may smile, and smile, and be a villain.

B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>statements</th>
<th>true</th>
<th>false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Nouns always come before verbs.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Plural nouns always end in -s.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. We use a singular verb after the pronouns everything and everyone.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Pronouns sometimes take the place of a noun or noun phrase.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. We can use pronouns to talk about people or things in general.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C

pronouns: it, your, someone
nouns: courage, dreams

Activity 1: Exploring Categories of Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>People</th>
<th>Places</th>
<th>Physical things</th>
<th>Abstract nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Joseph Priestley, minister</td>
<td>school, England</td>
<td>book, electricity, illustrations, gases, oxygen</td>
<td>profession, interests, number, fields, lifetime, religion, politics, education, science, experiments, life, discovery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about It
Answers will vary.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Benjamin Franklin did many different things. He was a newspaper editor and printer when he was young. Then he became a diplomat. He was the American ambassador to France. He was also a politician. He was governor of Pennsylvania from 1785 to 1788. As a scientist, he did many experiments, and he invented the lightning rod. He was also a successful writer.

Activity 2: Grouping Noncount Nouns
Sports, physical activities: karate, surfing, yoga
Gases, liquids, materials: gasoline, oil, smoke
Abstract ideas: art, darkness, information, loneliness, self-confidence
School subjects: music, physics
Names of categories: clothing, equipment, furniture, transportation
Natural occurrences: fire, snow
Things with tiny parts too small to count: hair, rice, salt
Illnesses: cancer, diabetes

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Sports, physical activities: basketball, cycling
Gases, liquids, materials: steel, water
Abstract ideas: innocence, knowledge
School subjects: geography, history
Names of categories: countries, sports
Natural occurrences: hurricanes, ice
Things with tiny parts too small to count: pepper, sand
Illnesses: arthritis, obesity

Activity 3: Using Noncount Nouns
1. Where can you get information about your ancestors?
2. How often do you have trouble controlling your anger?
3. What was the best advice someone gave you?
4. What was the most interesting thing in the news yesterday?
5. Do you think it's possible to find happiness?
6. Do you always do your homework?
7. How can we reduce air pollution?
8. Did you enjoy studying history in school?
9. Do you always tell the truth?
10. Do you listen to music every day?

Activity 4: Collocations with Noncount Nouns
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Where can you get information about different professions?
Do you always speak the truth?
Do you always follow your best friend's advice?
Do you like to discuss politics with your family?
Where do you go to do research for your classes?
Where do you go to buy furniture?

Activity 5: Distinguishing Count and Noncount Nouns

For about a hundred years, white coats were the standard uniform for most doctors. Doctors didn't always wear white coats. Up until the early part of the twentieth century, they wore street clothes—or even black clothes out of respect for the dead! They also did not have much training, and their methods were primitive. In the late 1900s, doctors began to rely on scientific evidence when it came to medical treatment. Scientists wore knee-length white coats while doing experiments to protect their clothing and skin from chemicals. Soon doctors started wearing the white lab coats of the scientist to reassure their patients that their care was based on science and not superstition.
So, wearing white coats became a tradition for physicians. That tradition is changing, however, and your doctor may very well wear a business suit during your next examination.

Think about It
Answers will vary.

Activity 6: Count or Noncount Meaning?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Count</th>
<th>Noncount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. In the past, people recorded important information on paper. Today most people use computers.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. A 2005 planning paper considered several alternatives.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Recycled paper is used to produce newspapers.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Ross has written several papers on climate change.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. To get a PhD, you have to write a very long paper, or dissertation.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Paper used to be made from pieces of cloth.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Recycling one ton of paper saves about 17 trees.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. You can go to the Internet to get suggestions for writing a paper.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Many schools work hard to get parents involved with their kids’ educations.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. A recent poll reported that 90 percent of Americans believe the government should spend the same or more on education.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. For some careers—law, medicine, engineering—a college education is necessary.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Many cities have their own laws regulating education.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. In tough economic times, an education is more important than ever.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. As time went on, more people wanted to join the team.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. They asked eight people at a time to play the game.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. This website has been visited more than 11,000 times.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. There was a time when no one had a television.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. It is time to rethink our priorities.</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 7: Using Count and Noncount Meanings

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
You shouldn’t judge a person based on beauty alone. Most people think she’s going to be a beauty when she grows up. Nutritious food is necessary for healthy development.

There are some common foods that will help you lose weight. I know many people who don’t own televisions. He has never really enjoyed watching television.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I eat a lot of cheese. I think French cheeses are the best.

Activity 8: Error Correction
1. We had a lot of fun on our way to the beach.
2. People should just practice to get experience speaking English.
3. People see a lot of advertisements when they watch television.
4. Being a good parent requires love and caring. Good parents tell their children every day that they love them.
5. In school, we had a physical education every afternoon for an hour.
6. Radio remains popular because our society is very mobile. People who use automobiles as their main form of transportation usually listen to the radio while they are driving.
7. If you don’t have self-confidence, you might appear nervous at a job interview. Having information about the job and the company can help you feel more confident.
8. Many people believe that the Internet will greatly improve education, but I don’t agree. In the past, we had to spend a lot of time searching for information; now, a quick Internet search often gets us all the information we need. This is a good thing, but it isn’t everything. Once we have information, we need to analyze it and discuss it.

Activity 9: Noticing Personal Pronouns
1. If you have it, you want to share it, but if you don’t have it, what is it? d
2. The more of them you take, the more you leave behind. What are they? e
3. If it has a face, two arms, and two hands, but it cannot move, it counts to 12, but it cannot speak. It can still tell you something every day. What is it? f
4. If you take off my skin, I won’t cry, but you will. What am I? a
5. If you look at me and you look at you, I raise my right hand and you raise your left. What am I? c
6. If run, but I have no legs. What am I? b

Activity 10: Distinguishing Subject and Object Pronouns
1. A: Did you call me?
   B: Yes, I was wondering if you could help Ann and me.
2. A: Do you know who John Bell is?
   B: Sure. I listen to him on the radio all the time.
3. A: How is your sister doing?
   B: She’s OK. We had to take her to the hospital, but she’s OK.
4. A: Are these your keys?
   B: Yes, thanks. Where did you find them?
   A: They were on the floor in the library.
5. A: Is something wrong?
   B: I don’t know.
   A: Sure you do. Now, come on, tell me.
6. A: How do you folks like our hotel so far?
   B: Oh, it’s just wonderful.
7. A: Are Tom and Lisa coming to the meeting?
   B: Oh, I forgot to tell them about it.
   A: That’s OK. They’re usually too busy to come anyway.
8. A: I’d like to check in, please.
   B: How long are you planning on staying with us?
   A: Just tonight.
Elements of Success L3 Answer Key

Activity 13: Listening for Reduced Words
1. A: What did you say to Jim?
   B: I told him to come back later.
2. A: Have you seen Paula today?
   B: No, but I saw her yesterday.
3. A: Do you know Tom and Ron?
   B: I've met them, but I don't know them very well.
4. A: How's your new boss?
   B: Everyone likes her a lot.
5. A: Are you in touch with Andrew?
   B: No, but I talk to his brother every day.
6. A: What should I say?
   B: I think you should tell him the truth.
7. A: Would you mind taking your brothers to the movie?
   B: But I don't want to go with them.
8. A: Can my friend Steve come, too?
   B: If he wants to.
9. A: Why isn't Sarah here?
   B: I asked her to come, but her parents are visiting.
10. A: How's your new teacher?
    B: I think he's great.
11. A: Mr. Evans is waiting for you.
    B: How long has he been here?
12. A: Where are Tim and Lisa?
    B: I don't know. Can you call them?
13. A: Why did you tell them I got a new job?
    B: I didn't know it was a secret.
    B: I don't know. I only spent a few minutes with her.

Activity 14: Distinguishing Personal Pronouns and Possessive Determiners
Not so long ago, when I was in college, I wrote a paper on Carl Sagan. I wanted to find out as much as I could about Sagan's research as well as his writings. So, I called his secretary at Cornell University and asked her if she could send me Sagan's vita. A vita is a brief list of a person's education, jobs, awards, and publications. It's usually a few pages long. She asked, "Are you sure you want the whole thing?" I didn't really understand what she meant, but I said, "Yes." A few days later, I got this thick package in the mail. Inside was Sagan's vita. It was 233 pages long! That's how many pages it took to list this extraordinary man's achievements, scientific papers, and popular articles. Although Carl Sagan died in 1996, his influence is still felt in books, TV series, articles, and even movies based on his ideas.

Activity 16: Pronouncing Possessive Pronouns
Students will circle the stressed pronouns in the Think about It activity.
1. A: Is this my book?
   B: No, it's mine.
2. A: Whose book is this?
   B: It's mine.
3. A: Is this Stella's computer?
   B: No, she told me it was yours.
4. A: I forgot to bring my homework.
   B: Yeah, I forgot mine, too.
   B: But this isn't his.
   A: If it's not his, then whose is it?

Activity 17: Using Pronouns and Possessive Determiners
1. A: Where do you want me to park my car?
   B: Why don't you leave it here? I'll put mine over there.
2. A: Does anyone here know Ben Wilson?
   B: Actually, my brother is a good friend of his.
3. A: How did you get in?
   B: Jason gave me his key.
4. A: What do you think of their new house?
   B: It's nice but it's not as big as ours.
5. A: Are you sure? I thought theirs was bigger.
6. A: Can my friend Steve come, too?
   B: No, but I talk to his brother every day.
7. A: Does anyone know Ben Wilson?
   B: Actually, my brother is a good friend of his.
8. A: Can you and John help me tomorrow?
   B: Afraid not. We both have to work.
9. A: I thought John didn't have a job.
   B: No, he just got one. His brother hired him to work on his house.

Activity 18: Error Correction
1. My best friend and I are in the same class. I usually sit next to her and we get along well.
2. My parents are strict with my older brother and me. They didn't allow us to travel alone until we were in college. Even then, they worried about us a lot.
3. Several months ago, my friend and I had a big argument. We didn't talk for weeks, but we reconciled.
4. My sister and I have always been good friends. I can honestly say I have never gotten angry with her.
5. My sister drives to school every day with a friend of hers. They're always late.
6. My friends and I usually get together after class. Sometimes we go out for coffee and sometimes we have lunch together. Whatever we do, we have a good time.
7. My best friend and I are in the same class. I usually sit next to her, and during the break we talk and laugh.
8. This girl she said I should apply for a job where she works. I didn't know her very well, but I decided to take her advice and apply for a job. I talked to the owner of the business and he liked me a lot, but he didn't offer me a job.
9. Several months ago, my friend and I had a big argument. Of course, she thought it was my fault, and I thought it was hers.
10. My parents moved to my neighborhood. It made me happy to see them almost every day.
11. Last year, my parents moved to my neighborhood. It made me happy to see them almost every day.
12. My best friend and I are in the same class. We get along very well.
13. My parents moved to my neighborhood. It made me happy to see them almost every day.
14. My best friend and I are in the same class. We get along very well.

Activity 19: Identifying Indefinite Pronouns
The letters indicate the cartoons that match the captions.
1. "You work harder than anyone else."
2. "Everybody feels a little depressed at this time of year."
3. "You think I do nothing all day."
4. "I'll be at lunch. If anyone calls, say I'm at the health club."
5. "Does anyone know what the date is?"
6. "Nothing for me, thanks."
1. "Nobody lives forever."
2. "I'd like my daughter to know something about engines."
3. "I like things nobody else likes."
4. "I think everybody bought everything they needed three or four years ago."

Activity 20: Using Indefinite Pronouns. 
Answers will vary. Possible answers include: 
1. I prefer to travel with someone I know. 
2. Everybody should have enough food to eat. 
3. Nobody in my class has a full-time job. 
4. There isn't anyone in my class who speaks Spanish. 
5. If someone wants to be a success, he or she must work hard. 
6. Everybody needs time to relax and have fun. 
7. I couldn't find anyone to help me. 
8. I need something to write with. 
9. I can't think of anything better than being a teacher.
10. A fad is something that becomes popular quickly for a short period of time.

Activity 21: Singular or Plural Verb? 
1. Is anyone absent today? 
2. Are there enough chairs in the room for everyone? 
3. Is there anything interesting on the walls of our classroom? 
4. Do we have everything we need in our classroom? 
5. Does everyone in our class come from the same country? 
6. Is anybody married? 
7. Does somebody in the class have children? 
8. Is someone wearing a red shirt? 
9. Has anyone traveled to another country this year? 
10. Has anybody in the class been to Japan? 
11. Have we learned everything in this book? 
12. Have you ever made someone a cake?

Activity 22: Describing Indefinite Pronouns 
Answers will vary. Possible answers include: 
1. A: Julia just bought something really expensive. 
   B: Oh no! What was it? 
   B: Why? I didn't do anything wrong. 
4. A: Well, then, who broke the car window? 
5. A: Was there anything interesting in the newspaper? 
   B: Yeah. There's a pretty good article about Greece. 
6. A: I have something horrible to tell you. 
   B: What is it? 
   A: I just lost my job. 
7. A: Let's do something new and different today. 
   B: Like what? 
   A: Like, um, like . . . let's go swimming at the lake. 
8. A: Is everyone at the club going? 
   B: Yes, I think so. 
9. A: Have you ever met someone from the movies? 
   B: No, but I once saw the musician Yo-Yo Ma on the street. 
10. A: Do you know anything about local farming? 
   B: I know there's a farmers' market downtown on Tuesdays.

Activity 23: Using Any- and No- 
1. There isn't anybody here named Chris. 
2. I don't think anybody's home. 
3. There was nothing good on TV last night. 
4. I didn't have anybody to talk to all day. 
5. There isn't anything better than a glass of cold water.

Activity 24: Using Some- and Any- 
Agree/disagree answers will vary. 
1. Don't do anything active just before you go to bed. You might not be able to sleep. 
2. If you have money problems, don't tell anyone in your family. 
3. When you get angry about something, count to ten before speaking. 
4. When you don't feel well, it helps to wear something comfortable. 
5. You shouldn't take anything/something that doesn't belong to you. 
6. Every day, take a few minutes to notice something positive about life around you. 
7. Don't go to sleep while you're mad at anyone/someone. 
8. Resolve your disagreement first. 
9. Always try to think of something good about each person you work with. 
10. Don't buy anything/something you can't afford. 
11. Do something fun or creative with your friends every week.

Activity 25: Review of Indefinite Pronouns 
Answers will vary. Possible answers include: 
1. Have you ever done something scary? 
2. Do you know anyone famous? 
3. Have you met anyone tall recently? 
4. In school, did you learn anything about electromagnetism? 
5. Have you ever forgotten something? 
6. Do you know anybody who lives in the Middle East? 
7. Do you know anyone who speaks Chinese? 
8. Is there anything you don't like about playing sports? 
9. Do you know anything about making chocolate? 
10. Does anyone else in your family ski? 
11. Have you ever made someone a cake? 
12. Did you do anything adventurous on your last vacation?

Activity 26: Referring Back to Nouns 
1. Listen carefully to other people when they speak, and don't interrupt when you are part of the audience. 
2. Show other speakers that you respect their viewpoints even when you don't agree with them. 
3. (You) Think about the speaker's main idea and try to put it in your own words. 
4. Remember to turn off your cell phone before the speaker begins. You don't want it to ring during the talk. 
5. When you are planning a presentation, think about your listeners. What do they already know about your topic? 
6. Try starting your presentation with a personal story. It will get the attention of your audience.
7. Be sure that you don’t talk too fast, or no one will understand you.
8. If you use pictures, make sure the people in the back of the room can see them.
9. Be willing to answer questions at the end of your presentation. If you don’t know an answer, volunteer to find out and share it later.
10. If you are making a series of points, organize them from most important to least important.
11. A good conversation is an exchange of ideas. Everyone needs to be included in it.
12. During a class discussion, encourage your classmates to talk by asking them questions.

Write about it
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Make eye contact with your classmates so you know they are paying attention.
If you use charts, make sure they are clear and easy to understand.
If you don’t understand something the speaker says, ask about it after the presentation.

Activity 27: Identifying Pronoun References
1. subway riders
2. the child’s
3. the child’s
4. the child’s
5. the babysitter
6. the ball
7. the train
8. the child
9. the witness
10. saving the child

Activity 28: Using Plural Forms
1. Good doctors listen carefully to their patients.
2. Carpenters need to take good care of their tools.
3. Horse trainers must be gentle with their horses. They should never lose their tempers.
4. Good parents encourage their children to talk to them.
5. Office managers need to be organized so they can make good decisions.
6. Good employers can communicate clearly with their employees.
7. Good teachers are able to change to meet their students’ needs.
8. Lawyers must pass a state exam before they can practice law.
9. Pilots in training must get 250 flight hours before they can fly commercially.
10. Supervisors must be well-spoken so they can explain clearly what needs to be done.

Think about it
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Plural forms are more common because they represent both males and females without being too formal or repetitive.

Write about it
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
What makes a good store clerk?
Good store clerks pay attention to what customers are looking at, so they can offer suggestions.
Good store clerks make sure to be easily available to customers without bothering or distracting them.
Good store clerks pay attention to how much they have of something so they know when to order more of it.

Activity 29: Using Plural Forms
It takes a special kind of person to be an effective leader. Effective leaders have a confident attitude. They know what their goals are and how they want to reach them. At the same time, they are flexible. Good leaders can make changes to their plans when it is necessary. The people around them can feel sure that they will be good guides.

Effective leaders are good listeners. They pay attention to other people’s needs. They let people know that they are working for everybody’s interest, not just their own. Finally, effective leaders know that they can’t do everything alone. They know how to ask other people for help. They know how to divide responsibilities among several people. Being a good leader takes a certain kind of talent. Not everyone can do it well.

Activity 30: Referring Back to Indefinite Pronouns
1. I hate it when people use their cell phones in a restaurant.
   They should at least get up and leave the table.
2. It bothers me when people send text messages while they are talking to me.
3. It drives me crazy when people chew their food with their mouths open.
4. I don’t like it when people drive their cars really close behind me.
5. When I call people in the evening, I’m always afraid I’ll disturb them.
6. It bothers me when people don’t do their jobs.
7. I don’t understand why people smoke. They should quit.
8. It’s irritating when people are late and they don’t even call to tell you.
9. I don’t like it when people disagree with me and they won’t listen to my viewpoint.
10. I don’t like it when people borrow something and they don’t return it.

Write about it
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
It bothers me when people ask me to meet them and then they arrive late.
I don’t like it when people talk very loudly in restaurants. It drives me crazy when people talk on their cell phones during a movie.

Activity 31: One or It?
1. A: Do you need your book back?
   B: No, you can give it to me later.
2. A: Sorry I broke your glass.
   B: No problem. I can replace it tomorrow.
3. A: Is that a new hat?
   B: Yeah, I bought it online.
   A: Nice. I like it.
4. A: Did you buy a new hat?
   B: Yeah, I found one online. I’ll bring it in tomorrow.
5. A: Can I get you a cup of coffee?
   B: No, thanks. I’ve already got one.
6. A: Have you seen any good movies lately?
   B: Yeah, I saw one last week. It was called The 39 Steps.
7. A: Can you do the grocery shopping?
   B: Yeah, but I need a list.
   A: OK, I’ll put one together for you.
8. A: My allergies are terrible today.
   B: Did you take your allergy pill?
   A: Yeah. I took it an hour ago.

Activity 32: What Does the Pronoun Refer To?
1. another = another explanation
2. others = other people
It's not difficult to learn how to use social media.
It's not easy to keep up with the changes in modern technology.
It is common for students to bring laptop computers to class.
With a cell phone, it is easy to call for help if you need it.
It is important to eat plenty of fruits and vegetables.
Possible answers include: Answers will vary.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Activity 33: One, Another, Some, and Others
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. There are several ways to cook eggs. One is to fry them in a pan. Another is to boil them in water. You can also scramble them or bake them in a quiche or frittata.
2. There are many different ways you can get the news. One is to read it online. Another is to watch it on TV. Others may be available to you depending on your location.
3. Travelers have many options for buying airline tickets. Some buy their tickets through a travel agent. Others buy them online.

Activity 34: Making General Statements about People
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. You can't enjoy books unless you know how to read.
2. You cannot think openly with a closed mind.
3. If you can draw it, you can build it.
4. The dream of one is the nightmare of another.
5. All you need in life is knowledge and ambition, and then success is sure.
6. They say life has become too difficult for easy answers. They are wrong.

Activity 35: Using It as a Placeholder
1. It is important to take care of your body and stay healthy, and there are many different ways you can do this.
2. It's not easy to stay calm when someone makes you angry.
3. It's not always possible to do well in school.
4. It isn't easy to be a good parent.
5. It is common for mothers as well as fathers to have a career.
6. When you travel to a foreign country, it is fun to visit someone's home.
7. It is essential for doctors to listen to their patients.
8. It is unhealthy to work seven days a week.
9. Because of modern health care, it is not uncommon for people to live into their eighties.
10. It's important to get some exercise every day.
11. It's difficult to have a good relationship with someone who doesn't tell the truth.
12. With modern technology, it is easy to keep in touch with friends and relatives.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Activity 37: Pronouncing Compound Nouns
1. ☐ compound noun ☑ adjective + noun
2. ☐ compound noun ☑ adjective + noun
3. ☑ compound noun ☐ adjective + noun
4. ☐ compound noun ☑ adjective + noun
5. ☑ compound noun ☐ adjective + noun
6. ☑ compound noun ☐ adjective + noun
7. ☐ compound noun ☑ adjective + noun
8. ☑ compound noun ☐ adjective + noun
9. ☑ compound noun ☐ adjective + noun
10. ☑ compound noun ☐ adjective + noun

Activity 38: Identifying Compound Nouns

The Huntsman Spider
Imagine driving in your car. Suddenly, a huge spider runs across the windshield. If you are in Australia, it is probably a (huntsman) spider. Although the name is scary, the spider doesn't actually hunt men. In fact, the spiders are very beneficial creatures because they eat insects. They are large (as large as your hand) and hairy, and in Australia you can find them everywhere. They live in woods, in living rooms, and even in bedrooms. They can run really fast and are hard to catch. In Sydney, people often come home from work to find a (huntsman) spider on their dining table or sitting in their favorite armchair. This often happens after a thunderstorm as the spiders come inside for shelter. Most Australians have learned to live with them. They catch the spiders rather than kill them.

Water Found on Distant Planet
Water has been discovered on a planet beyond our (solar system). A telescope detected water vapor in the atmosphere of a gas giant that is 64 light years away from Earth. Although the planet is too hot to support life, the discovery suggests that water may be commonly found on planets throughout the galaxy. According to Giovanna Tinetti of University College London, who led the (research group), the team will be able to use this method in the future to study other planets that are "life-friendly."

Activity 39: Using Compound Nouns
Students will decide whether the compound nouns are count nouns or noncount nouns in the Think about It activity.
1. You use about 200 muscles when you take one step. That's a lot of muscle power.
2. Children grow faster in the springtime.
3. Fingernails grow four times faster than toenails.
4. Each hair on your head has a lifespan of three to seven years.
5. The surface area of the human lungs is equal to a tennis court.
6. Your thighbones are the bones in your upper leg. They are stronger than concrete.
7. In addition to unique fingerprints, humans have unique tongue prints.
8. There are four main blood types in the world. The most common is Type O.
9. There are about 86 billion nerve cells in the human brain.

10. Your jawbone is the hardest bone in your body.

11. When they fall out, eyelashes take seven to eight weeks to grow back.

12. Babies are born with soft kneecaps. They don’t turn into bone until a child is two to five years old.

Think about It

Activities will vary.

Possible answers include:

- bookshelf
daylight

- post office
cell phone

- stepfather

- home-schooling

- light bulb

- seat belt

- timeline

- voice mail

- video conferencing

Activity 40: Noticing Spelling Changes

Activities will vary. Possible answers include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Word + suffix</th>
<th>Spelling change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. describe</td>
<td>description</td>
<td>Drop the -e, change -b to -p, and add -tion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. happy</td>
<td>happiness</td>
<td>Change the -y to -i and add -ness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. arrive</td>
<td>arrival</td>
<td>Drop the -e and add -al.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. inquire</td>
<td>inquiry</td>
<td>Drop the -re and add -ry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. possible</td>
<td>possibility</td>
<td>Drop the -lle and add -ility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. urgent</td>
<td>urgency</td>
<td>Drop the -t and add -cy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. decide</td>
<td>decision</td>
<td>Drop the -de and add -sion.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 41: Identifying Nouns with Suffixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. A Portrait of the Artist as a Young Man</th>
<th>Verb + suffix</th>
<th>Adjective + suffix</th>
<th>Noun + suffix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Childhood's End</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The Importance of Being Earnest</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Crime and Punishment</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Appointment in Samarra</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. The Loneliness of the Long-Distance Runner</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. A Handful of Dust</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Great Expectations</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Teach Us to Outgrow Our Madness</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. The House of Silence</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 42: Forming Nouns with Suffixes

1. action
2. agreement
3. bravery

Activity 43: Forming Nouns with Suffixes

1. I can't decide. = I can't make a decision.
2. I am proud of the things I have achieved. = I am proud of my achievements.
3. My work isn't ready to be evaluated. = My work isn't ready for evaluation.
4. It's important to be free. = Freedom is important.
5. I don't understand why this news is urgent. = I don't understand the urgency of this news.
6. How many miles is it to the nearest city? = What is the mileage to the nearest city?
7. I'm not interested in becoming a member of this group. = Membership in this group doesn't interest me.
8. I can't explain this. = I don't have an explanation for this.
9. Do you need someone to assist you? = Do you need an assistant?
10. Why is this assignment important? = What is the importance of this assignment?
11. You should be proud of the things you have accomplished. = You should be proud of your accomplishments.
12. It's important to participate in class discussions. = Participation in class discussions is important.
13. The archeologists discovered something important this year. = The archeologists made an important discovery this year.
14. About 4,000 people reside in this area. = There are about 4,000 residents in this area.
15. The two teams agreed to postpone the game. = The two teams made an agreement to postpone the game.

Think about It

Activities will vary. Possible answers include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Sample sentences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. education</td>
<td>I want to get a good education.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. election</td>
<td>I have never voted in an election.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. narration</td>
<td>She performed a wonderful narration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. anticipation</td>
<td>The anticipation was almost as exciting as the event itself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. competition</td>
<td>The competition was fierce.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. jubilation</td>
<td>The jubilation of the people was inspiring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. creation</td>
<td>The sculpture was his favorite of all his creations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Elements of Success L3 Answer Key.indd   67
Activity 44: Identifying Pronoun References

1. With the new public transportation system, fewer people are driving their cars to work. This could be good for the environment because cars give off pollution.

2. Many scientists believe that gases in the air are causing the earth to gradually become warmer. That is called global warming.

3. Young children learn new words very quickly. Researchers have called this the “vocabulary explosion.”

4. The Apple computer company has sold over 15 billion digital songs from its iTunes program. This has made a lot of money for record companies.

5. In 1997, about 12 million people in the United States worked at home at least one day a month. That is very different from today’s numbers.

6. Most green buildings have lights that automatically turn off when people leave the room. They are also designed with lots of windows. During the day, this allows people to use the sun instead of lamps for light.

7. To cope with stress, many people practice yoga every evening. This helps them relax after a long day. It also helps them get a good night’s sleep.

8. People use a lot of unfamiliar words when they talk about the inventor Buckminster Fuller. This is because Fuller invented words to describe his ideas and inventions.

Activity 45: Identifying Pronoun References

Think about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Pronoun Reference</th>
<th>May Mean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>&quot;it&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;someone else’s work&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>&quot;this&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;managing people&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>&quot;that&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;someone else’s work&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>&quot;this&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;plagiarism&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>&quot;that&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;my most prized possession&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>&quot;this&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;mathematics&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>&quot;that&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;teaching in a traditional way&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>&quot;that&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;my most prized possession is my Greek dictionary&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

They may have used different pronouns for variety and clarity.

Activity 46: Common Verbs Used with This and That

1. Successful supervisors give good feedback to their employees. This includes correcting their work and praising them for a job well done.

2. If I only had a few months to live, I would eat my favorite food as often as I could. That means I would eat pizza every night for dinner.

3. Sunlight mixes with pollution to create ozone. Ozone is helpful because it blocks the sun’s harmful rays. But close to Earth, ozone can be harmful to people. That explains why some people have health problems when the ozone level is high.

4. There are several ways to use the sun’s power to make electricity. One is called concentrating solar power. This involves using mirrors to focus the sun’s rays. This provides heat, which helps power generators.

5. A team of researchers has found the bones of four different kinds of dinosaurs at the same site in New Mexico. This suggests that many different kinds of dinosaurs existed at the same time.

6. In science fiction movies, the characters always refer to “outer space.” This implies somehow, that there’s also an “inner space.”

7. After a job interview, it’s a good idea to send the interviewer a thank-you letter or email. This indicates that you are interested in the job.

8. The college admissions process should help students evaluate their strengths. This requires careful thought and self-awareness.

Think about It

Students should have underlined the following words in Activity 46:

1. good feedback
2. concentrating solar power
3. a team of researchers has found the bones of four different kinds of dinosaurs at the same site
4. In science fiction movies, the characters always refer to “outer space.”
5. it’s a good idea to send the interviewer a thank-you letter or email
6. The college admissions process should help students evaluate their strengths.

Activity 47: Recognizing This, That, and It References

Think about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

They may have used different pronouns for variety and clarity.

Activity 48: Interpreting the Meaning of Things

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Objects</th>
<th>Actions</th>
<th>Ideas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I’m going to pass out a couple of things before we get started. The first is a program evaluation.</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. There are seven things you can do to get organized.
   ✓  ✓  □

3. There are three important things I’d like to share with you about being a teacher.
   □  □  ✓

4. Of all the things I do during the day, the best is interacting with students.
   ✓  □  □

5. I rarely have large blocks of time when I can get things done.
   □  ✓  □

6. I try not to take a lot of work home with me on the weekend, but sometimes I have to read students’ papers and things like that.
   ✓  □  □

7. My subject area is environmental science, which has to do with climate change and things like that.
   □  □  ✓

8. There are some things you need to bring to every class.
   ✓  □  □

9. That’s one of the important things to ask when you are interviewing for a job.
   □  □  ✓

10. You need to pay more attention to the details. Here I’m talking just about your writing—commas, periods, spelling, and things like that.
    □  □  ✓

Think about It
 Answers will vary.

Activity 49: Recognizing Vague Words
1. doohickey
2. thingy
3. whatshername
4. thingamajig
5. whatchamacallit
6. whatshisname

Activity 50: Using Pronouns in Tag Questions
1. A: That was a great meal, wasn’t it?
   B: Yeah, wonderful.
2. A: Your sister isn’t coming, is she?
   B: No, I don’t think so.
3. A: That was really funny, wasn’t it?
   B: Yeah, sure. I guess so.
4. A: Ann’s really nice, isn’t she?
   B: Yeah, the best.
5. A: That was your idea, wasn’t it?
   B: I can’t remember.
6. A: You were here yesterday, weren’t you?
   B: Yeah, all day.
7. A: John seemed nervous, didn’t he?
   B: Yeah, a little bit.
8. A: Cold today, isn’t it?
   B: Yeah, freezing.
9. A: The test was hard, wasn’t it?
   B: Not really.
10. A: Your parents are coming, aren’t they?
    B: Yes, and my grandparents, too.
11. A: Your brother didn’t go, did he?
    B: No, he stayed at home.
12. A: Time for lunch, isn’t it?
    B: Absolutely.

Activity 51: Choosing Appropriate Pronoun Forms
1. A: Why is Sam making dinner?
   B: Because no one else can cook like he can.
2. A: Who should I send the package to?
   B: Just send it to Bill and me.
3. A: Are you worried about the deadline?
   B: Well, just between you and me, I think it’s a serious problem.
4. A: Who taught you how to paint houses?
   B: My father taught both my brother and me when we were teenagers.
5. A: Are you doing something with Tom tomorrow?
   B: Yeah. He and I are going to play tennis.
6. A: Are you worried about Tom and Jill?
   B: Not really. A lot of people have less money than they do.
7. A: If Irene can go out, why can’t I?
   B: Because you’re younger than she is.
8. A: Anne should go first because she’s the tallest.
   B: But I’m as tall as she is.
9. A: Have you seen Sarah lately?
   B: Yeah. She and I had coffee yesterday.
10. A: I need a ride to the meeting.
    B: Do you want to come with Jim and me?

Activity 52: Using Different Forms of the Same Word
1. Studies show that certain parts of the brain become active during sleep. This activity could be the brain moving memories from short-term to long-term memory.
2. Tests for cancer can fail to find problems. A failure like this can be disastrous when a patient does not get treated right away.
3. More than 50 percent of patients feel rushed when they visit their doctor. This feeling is more common among elderly patients.
4. As early as the 1950s, medical researchers investigated the connection between smoking and cancer. The investigation led to the first anti-smoking laws.
5. Medical insurance costs have increased dramatically in the last ten years. As a result of this increase, many people cannot afford insurance.
6. Over the years, many governments have invested heavily in medical research. This investment has led to several important medical breakthroughs.
7. Not all medical discoveries are made in a scientist’s youth. The scientist Benjamin Duggar discovered the use of tetracycline antibiotics when he was 76.
8. In 1777, General George Washington had his entire army vaccinated. This action was controversial at the time because few doctors believed in vaccinations.
9. Some doctors are starting to use computers to help diagnose Alzheimer’s disease. This method of diagnosis is more accurate and faster than current methods.
10. Many people are allergic to peanuts. Some researchers say the number of peanut allergies found in children has increased dramatically in the last ten years.
11. Tension headaches are caused by muscle contractions that cause mild pain. This type of headache may not be extremely painful, but it lasts for a long period of time.
12. We cough in order to clear irritated airways so we can breathe better. However, too much coughing can cause further irritation to the lungs and throat.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
4. The inquiry led to the first anti-smoking laws.
5. As a result of this growth, many people cannot afford insurance.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
4. The decision of some companies to sell AZT at a discount will save many lives.
5. The expression of many human emotions may be universal.
6. The government’s investment in a national health-care system greatly improved the health of the British nation.
7. The emphasis on the psychological side of human health nowadays has led to changes in patient care.
8. The conclusion that climate change is caused by human activity is accepted by many—but not all—scientists.

Activity 53: Using Fewer Words
1. Extinction is a natural process.
2. The disappearance of many species of fish from the ocean is now accelerating.
3. The effectiveness of the AZT treatment for AIDS is well known.
4. The decision of some companies to sell AZT at a discount will save many lives.
5. The expression of many human emotions may be universal.
6. The government’s investment in a national health-care system greatly improved the health of the British nation.
7. The emphasis on the psychological side of human health nowadays has led to changes in patient care.
8. The conclusion that climate change is caused by human activity is accepted by many—but not all—scientists.

Activity 54: Understanding a Chain of References
1. him = my 12-year-old nephew
2. it = empty it
3. we = my nephew and I
4. him = my nephew
5. it = the bicycle
6. him = my nephew
7. it = the bicycle
8. it = riding the bicycle
9. he = my nephew
10. it = riding a bicycle

Activity 56: Using Pronouns in Writing
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. My favorite sport is volleyball. I like it because it is fast-paced. And I like how I have to stay focused on the game while I am playing it. Volleyball is also a team sport, and I like being part of a team.
2. If I could have a conversation with a famous person, I would talk with Mahatma Gandhi. He has definitely inspired me in my life. I’d like to talk with him about how we can change the world without violence. Gandhi said we should be the change we desire to see. I think this is a wise saying, and I would talk to him about it.
3. My main goal is to become financially secure. For me, financial security means not having to worry about having enough money for next month’s bills. It means having enough money to save for something you really want. It means not worrying that you will lose your apartment if you get injured and can’t work.
4. Your skin is the largest organ in your body. It keeps your stomach and other organs from falling out. And it keeps germs from coming in. Skin allows you to feel pain, heat, and cold, and through sweat, it rids your body of extra water and salt. Can you imagine life without your skin?
5. Lance Eton is an assistant professor of marine biology at the University of Manchester. He has always been interested in science and how things work. Living by the ocean made him curious about sea life, and he studied it in school.
6. People are finding new ways to make money. They might rent a room in their houses or make stuff in their homes and try to sell it.
7. Most doctors tell their patients to stop smoking. They explain to their patients that smoking is bad for their health. But some of them continue smoking anyway.
8. Antioxidants are chemicals in the body that fight cancer-causing substances called free radicals. Free radicals naturally occur in the body, but if there are too many of them, they can damage the body and cause cancer.

Activity 57: Evaluate
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. The writer repeats the word Internet in line 2, line 3, line 5, and line 8. The writer repeats the word education in lines 4 and 8. The writer repeats the word information in lines 4–7.
2. In line 5, the writer uses the word knowledge to replace information.
3. In line 2, it refers back to the Internet and them refers back to Students.
   In line 4, them and they refer back to students. This and it refer back to a quick Internet search often gets them the information they need.
   In line 5, it refers back to Education.
   In line 6, this refers back to learning to process that knowledge. They refers back to students. It (two instances) refers back to information.
   In line 7, it refers back to information.
   In line 8, it refers back to the Internet.
4. Yes, this paragraph is cohesive. Most sentences have pronouns, nouns, or noun phrases that refer back to information in previous sentences.

70  UNIT 7  ELEMENTS of SUCCESS • Student Book 3
Activity 58: Using Nouns and Pronouns in Writing

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. Some decisions are easy to make while others are very difficult. For example, it's usually easy to decide what you want to do for fun, but choosing a career can be very difficult. One of my most difficult decisions was choosing where to go to college. I had to decide what I wanted to study, and then I had to do research to find out where the best programs in that field of study are. Once I had a list of colleges, then I had to make other decisions, like whether I wanted to study in the country or in the city and whether I wanted to study at a large university or a small college.

2. Each person has many large and small accomplishments. One of my accomplishments is learning figure skating. I was very nervous the first time I put on skates, but once I stepped onto the ice, I felt comfortable. A friend was with me, and she helped me with my first achievement: skating once around the ice. With her help, I didn't fall too many times. I enjoyed my first time going skating, so I have been skating many times. I hope that I will be able to achieve my next goal, learning to jump on skates, soon.

3. Everyone should have goals in their lives. My goal is to become a journalist. My plan is to go to school to learn about journalism and then to work for a large newspaper. I would really like to be a sports journalist who specializes in reporting about soccer. My aim is to travel around the country reporting on what is happening in the world of soccer. Once I have worked as a journalist for a while, I plan to write a book about my experiences traveling and reporting on sports.

Wrap-Up

A

Answers will vary.

B

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent</th>
<th>Boss/Supervisor</th>
<th>Leader of a country</th>
<th>Friend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dependability</td>
<td>confidence</td>
<td>self-discipline</td>
<td>tolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flexibility</td>
<td>enthusiasm</td>
<td>able to make</td>
<td>empathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creativity</td>
<td>modesty</td>
<td>decisions</td>
<td>compassion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patience</td>
<td>imagination</td>
<td>courage</td>
<td>trust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commitment</td>
<td>persistence</td>
<td>persistence</td>
<td>interest in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td></td>
<td>imagination</td>
<td>others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caring</td>
<td></td>
<td>commitment</td>
<td>unselfishness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unselfishness</td>
<td></td>
<td>dependability</td>
<td>kindness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strong work</td>
<td>self-respect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ethic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C

Answers will vary.

D

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
A focus on testing does not prepare students for careers in business. This involves learning things such as teamwork, interpersonal skills, and creative problem solving.
Unit 8

Warm-Up

A
1. There are (seven / five) oceans on this planet.
2. Most of the world’s population lives in the (southern / northern) hemisphere.
3. North America and Europe move (about an inch / a few inches) apart every year.
4. About (10,000 / 1.3 million) earthquakes occur each year around the globe.
5. (Most / All) of the world’s tallest mountains are in the Himalayas.
6. There are (not many / no) rivers in the Bahamas.
7. Canada gets its name from a Native American word meaning (the village / the city).

A few are in the Karakoram Range.

B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>True</th>
<th>False</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. We can use a noun immediately after a determiner.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. We can use an adjective immediately after a determiner.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. We can use a verb immediately after a determiner.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. A determiner can give information about quantity.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. A determiner can give information about color or shape.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. A determiner can give information about possession.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C
most, more, a

Activity 1: Understanding Determiners
1. My most prized possession is my computer. It lets me stay in contact with my friends on several continents. Computers make the world seem like a really small place.
2. One of my prized possessions is my Greek dictionary. It might sound silly, but it’s true. With my dictionary, I can read some of the most beautiful literature in the world. It is also special to me because it was a gift from my teachers. It reminds me of the good experiences I had as a student in Greece.
3. My most prized possession is my guitar. This guitar is very special to me because it was my father’s guitar, and he got it from his father. My wife and I hope to give it to one of our children someday.
4. I have many prized possessions, but none are valuable. They are just things like old photographs and school papers. I also have lots of old letters that my grandparents wrote. There are even a few letters from my great-grandparents.

QUESTIONS
a. my, his, our
b. several, many, lots of, a few
c. the, a, this

Activity 2: Identifying Determiners
Students will circle the plural count nouns and noncount nouns in the Think about It activity.

1. Several hot (days) that follow each other are called a heat wave. Experts say heat waves often become dangerous when the nighttime temperature does not drop much from the highest daytime temperature. This constant heat causes great stress on the human body.
2. There are many things people can do to protect themselves from the dangers of extreme heat. Drink lots of cool water. Try to stay out of the sun. Wear light-weight clothes made from natural materials. Make sure the clothing is loose to allow freedom of movement.
3. Heat stress is the most common health problem linked to hot weather. The causes of heat stress include clothing that is too heavy, physical work or exercise, hot weather, and high humidity. The amount of water in the air.
4. Most people suffer muscle pain because of heat stress. The pain is a warning that the body is becoming too hot. Doctors say those individuals suffering from muscle pain could be in danger. They should stop all activity and rest in a cool place. Doctors say not to return to physical activity for a few hours.

Think about It

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No determiner + plural count noun</th>
<th>No determiner + noncount noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>experts</td>
<td>stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heat waves</td>
<td>heat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people</td>
<td>clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>materials</td>
<td>weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doctors</td>
<td>clothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>humidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>danger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>activity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 3: Using Determiners with Singular Count Nouns
Words in bold italic are the determiners that students should have inserted.

1. You cannot shake hands with a clenched fist.
2. If you want to lose a friend, lend him money.
3. Laughter is not at all a bad beginning for a friendship.
4. Hold a true friend with both your hands.
5. I have never been in any country where they did not do something better than we do it.
6. Even honey tastes bitter to a sick man.
7. Music is the universal language of mankind.
8. Giving your son a skill is better than giving him a thousand pieces of gold.
9. Banks are places where they lend you an umbrella in fair weather and ask for it back when it begins to rain.
10. I always tried to turn every disaster into an opportunity.
11. Judge a man by his questions rather than his answers.
12. Hope is a good breakfast, but it is a bad supper.

Activity 4: Using A and An
1. Can you recommend a good movie?
2. Is there a university near your home?
3. Did you get a good night’s sleep last night?
4. Are you an outgoing person?
5. Do you have a good sense of humor?
6. How many minutes are in an hour?
7. What is a major source of air pollution?
8. Is wood a synthetic material?
9. What are the qualities of a good boss?
10. Can you name a famous work of art?
11. Did you ever dream of becoming an actor?
12. Have you ever met a famous person?
13. Is there a difference between American English and British English?
14. Do you know the name of a good, inexpensive restaurant around here?

Activity 5: Using A/An with Singular Count Nouns
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I have never seen an elephant.
2. I don’t own an air conditioner, but I wish I did.
3. I would like to be a businessperson someday.
4. My best friend is a teacher.
5. There is a globe in my classroom.
6. I bought an umbrella last month.
7. When I was a child, my parents gave me an allowance.
8. There is a museum in my city.

Think about It
1. Group 3
2. Group 1
3. Group 2

Activity 6: Exploring Uses of The
(2)
1. The earliest process for making paper was invented by (1) Egyptians in the Nile Valley almost 5,000 years ago. In those days, strips of a papyrus plant were stuck together to form paper.
2. About 2,000 years ago, the ancient Chinese invented our modern paper-making process. In this process, raw materials like straw, wood, or the bark of trees are used. The raw materials are pounded again and again until they become loose, and then they are soaked in water. After removing (4) the water, a flat, thin form remains. When the form dries, it becomes a sheet of paper.
3. Europeans started using large machines for making paper near (3) the end of the sixteenth century. In modern times, paper-making is a very big business. However, it is still possible to make paper by hand using the same steps as those used with (4) the large machines.

Think about It
1. a papyrus plant: not talking about a specific thing
2. a flat, thin form; a sheet of paper: not talking about a specific thing
3. a big business: describing a type of thing

Activity 7: Using The
Students will insert the reason numbers in the Think about It activity.

One tourist attraction that I would consider a must-see is the Eiffel Tower in Paris. At the time of its construction in 1889, it was the tallest building in the world, and its appearance today is virtually identical to its appearance then. Unlike most other tall buildings, the shape of the Eiffel Tower is unique and majestic, so it is often treated more like a work of art than a building. It becomes even more beautiful when it is illuminated at night.

Visitors can go up the three levels of the tower, and since it is in the center of Paris, its view is second to none. No matter how many pictures you see of it, seeing the Eiffel Tower in person is an outstanding experience.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Central Park is a popular tourist attraction in New York City. On a sunny day, the park is full of people. Lots of families come to enjoy the park. Many of them bring picnic lunches. It’s common to see people walking their dogs in the park, especially in good weather.

Activity 8: Using The for Something Mentioned Before
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. One of the strangest dreams I ever had took place in a shopping mall. It was in the middle of the day, but the shopping mall was empty.
2. I once dreamed that I was trying to climb to the top of a mountain, but I wasn’t wearing any shoes. The sides of the mountain were steep, and I had trouble walking.
3. I had a dream that I was in a strange house with no windows. The walls of the house were painted purple.
4. In my dream, I heard a loud knocking noise. The noise should have scared me, but it seemed very natural.
5. One time I dreamed that I was all alone in an airplane. I was flying the airplane, and surprisingly, I knew what I was doing.
6. Last night I dreamed that I was riding an elephant in a desert. The desert stretched for miles, and then it turned into an ocean.
7. Once I had a dream that I was in a big city standing on the roof of a tall building. I am afraid of heights, but standing on the building in the dream didn’t bother me.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I once had a dream that I was the star of a Broadway musical. I can’t sing or dance at all, and I have terrible stage fright, but in the dream I loved being in the musical.

Activity 9: Distinguishing A and The
1. a. I’m taking a day off next week. 2 b. I need to leave early the day after tomorrow. 1
2. a. We need a new refrigerator. 2 b. Could you put my lunch in the refrigerator? 1
3. a. We went to the Museum of Modern Art while we were there. 1 b. We went to a museum while we were there. 2
4. a. I brought a computer with me. 2 b. I brought the computer with me. 1
5. a. I'm having a small problem with my car. 2
   b. They couldn't fix the problem with our TV. 1

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
In 1a, 2a, 3b, 4a, and 5a, the speaker is talking about a specific person.
In 1b, the listener will know what day today is and therefore what day the day after tomorrow is.
In 2b, there is only one refrigerator.
In 3a, the speaker mentions a specific museum.
In 4b and 5a, the speaker is talking about a specific computer and a specific problem; it's clear the listener already knows about it.

Activity 10: Choosing A or The
If I could have a conversation with a famous person, I would choose to talk with the leader of our country. I have many questions to ask him, both about his personal life and about his job.

Being the leader of this country must be a difficult and stressful job. I would like to ask him how he makes important decisions. Does he take advice from people who work for him? Does he research problems to make his own decisions? I would also like to know what personal life is like for a world leader. Does he have any free time? What does he do to relax? Does he ever just sit back and watch TV or read a book for fun?

I would also choose to talk to the leader of our country because I appreciate his doing such a difficult job. I would like to thank him for thinking about and trying to improve the quality of life for the people of his country.

Think about It
In #1, I chose “a” because the writer is not talking about a specific person.
In #2, I chose “the” because the writer is talking about a specific person.
In #3, I chose “the” because the writer is talking about a specific job.
In #4 and #5, I chose “a” because the writer is classifying or describing a type of job.
In #6, I chose “a” because the writer is not talking about a specific book.
In #7, I chose “the” because the writer is talking about a specific person.
In #8, I chose “a” because the writer is classifying or describing a type of job.
In #9, and #10, I chose “the” because the prepositional phrases tell what kind of quality and which people the writer is talking about.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
If I could have a conversation with a famous scientist, I would choose to talk with a scientist at Cornell University. I have many questions to ask him, both about his work as a scientist and about his personal life.

Most scientists advance their field of study. I would like to ask a famous scientist what made him think of doing the experiments that led to his biggest discoveries. Did he ask a question as a student that nobody had an answer for? Did he get an idea from an experiment that gave him a result he wasn't expecting?

I would also like to ask a famous scientist about his personal life. What does he do for fun? Does he read books and watch movies? Does he enjoy science fiction movies, for example?

Activity 11: Using Some
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Did you have some sandwiches for lunch yesterday?
   Did you have some soup for lunch yesterday?
2. Did you drink some milk this morning?
   Did you drink some juice this morning?
3. Do you have some friends with you today?
   Do you have some luggage with you today?
4. Are there some sports teams in your city?
5. Did you have some appointments yesterday?
   Did you have some cake yesterday?
6. Did you ever find some coins on the street?
   Did you ever find some graffiti on the street?
7. Do you need some help?
   Do you need some change?

Activity 12: Noticing No Article
Students will insert the plural count noun (p) and noncount noun (n) in the Think about It activity.

1. Many doctors have noticed an increase in eye problems among children.
2. Many things can trigger allergies.
3. Throughout history, many items have been used as money, including shells and salt.
4. Some experts say that drinking several liters of water each day will help adults lose weight.
5. Carrots are high in beta carotene, which is important for normal vision.
6. Scientists at Cornell University found that hot cocoa may help fight cancer.
7. A recent study suggests that the number of severe hurricanes this year is normal.
8. In the past few years, hurricanes have brought destruction to the eastern U.S.
9. The sun makes life on our planet possible by providing great amounts of light and heat.
10. Traditional sources of energy like oil and gas may someday run out.
Activity 13: Grouping Noun Phrases
Students will write the number of the reason in the Think about It activity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ø + plural noun</th>
<th>Ø + noncount noun</th>
<th>The + plural noun</th>
<th>The + noncount noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shallow dirt holes</td>
<td>stone</td>
<td>the world’s best-known monuments (2)</td>
<td>The earliest construction (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large pillars workers wooden supports builders</td>
<td>the stones (4) the builders (4) the third and fourth rings (1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horizontal stones</td>
<td>the series (3) the summer and winter solstices (1) the months (1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solar and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lunar eclipses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 14: Choosing No Article or The
1. What do the rings on the Olympic flag represent?
2. Do you have experience with computers?
3. Do you need energy and determination to play football well?
4. How big were the first electronic computers?
5. Why do people live longer today?
6. How many sides does a hexagon have?
7. What are the most serious problems in the world today?
8. Do you like to talk about movies?
9. Have you ever seen the sights of Paris?
10. What are the names of your two best friends?
11. Do you know how to make bread?
12. Is the Internet a good place to get information?

Activity 15: Choosing A/An, The, or No Article
Jake Nickell has always been a creative guy. When he was just 20 years old, he designed a T-shirt for an online competition. He won, and an hour later, he decided to start his own competition. He asked people to submit their own T-shirt designs, and he promised to print the best designs for everyone to wear. That’s how his successful company, Threadless.com, began.

Through the company’s website, Jake asks everyone to submit T-shirt designs. In the beginning, he enjoyed looking at T-shirt designs for fun, but when more people started to submit designs, the website grew, and Jake’s career took off. Today, Threadless.com has 1.7 million users who submit T-shirt designs. Jake and his staff print 2,000 T-shirts each year for sale to the general public. Jake is an example that you can turn a passion into a career.

Think about It

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular count noun</th>
<th>Plural count noun</th>
<th>Noncount noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a creative guy</td>
<td>people</td>
<td>the beginning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a T-shirt</td>
<td>the best designs</td>
<td>the general public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an online competition</td>
<td>T-shirt designs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an hour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the company’s website</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the website</td>
<td>designs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an example</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 16: Error Correction
1. The weather in my city isn’t very nice. The sun rarely comes out.
2. I don’t like vegetables. (no errors)
3. He is the most optimistic person I know.
4. Now I live in Canada, and my friend lives in my country.
5. People need to spend more time in the nature.
6. Their actions changed the history.
7. He was diagnosed with the cancer.
8. I have a brown eyes and long black hair.
9. At first my sister had a hard time in the U.S. because the culture was very different.
10. My interests are traveling anywhere, listening to music, and playing with my computer.

Activity 17: Identifying Generic Statements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic</th>
<th>Not generic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. A cell phone will not work in all locations.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Cell phones are much less expensive today.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The cell phone on the desk is mine.</td>
<td>☐ ☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Parents are the best advisors.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. My best friend’s parents are getting divorced.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. A parent has many responsibilities.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The parents at our school meeting learned a lot.</td>
<td>☐ ☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Young people should have opportunities to travel.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. The youngest person in my family is six years old.</td>
<td>☐ ☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. A young person doesn’t understand how quickly time goes by.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. An eagle is a large bird.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Eagles can fly 60 miles per hour.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. The eagle on a U.S. one-dollar bill is a bald eagle.</td>
<td>☐ ☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 18: A/An or No Article?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fact</th>
<th>Opinion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Ø Television can be educational and entertaining.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. A television set has a tuner, a screen, and speakers.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. A soccer ball weighs between 14 and 16 ounces.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Ø People should be more considerate with their cell phone use.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Ø Women are more patient than men.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. A man has more job opportunities than a woman.</td>
<td>☐ ☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Ø Male babies are 25 percent more likely to die in infancy than female babies.</td>
<td>☑ ☐</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hair is made of the same substance as fingernails.

Human thigh bones are stronger than concrete.

Adult lungs have a surface area of about 70 square meters.

Infants blink once or twice a minute; adults blink about ten times a minute.

The heart beats more than 2.5 billion times in an average lifetime.

Camels have three eyelids to protect themselves from blowing sand.

A crocodile can go without food for two years. The crocodile can go without food for two years.

The giraffe is the tallest land animal.

The right side of the brain controls the left side of the body.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Televisuon can be educational and entertaining. In fact, the best programs are both. For example, I like to watch nature shows about predators and their prey because they're exciting.

An apple a day keeps the doctor away. While this might not be true literally, it's important to eat plenty of fruits and vegetables to stay healthy. If you eat healthy foods, you're less likely to get sick.

Activity 19: Exploring Different Ways to Write Generic Statements
1. A toad is poisonous. The toad is poisonous.
2. Giraffes' tongues are blue. The giraffe's tongue is blue.
3. A mosquito has 47 teeth. The mosquito has 47 teeth.
4. An emu can't walk backward. The emu can't walk backward.
5. The dolphin sleeps with one eye open. Dolphins sleep with one eye open.
6. The bull is color-blind. Bulls are color-blind.
7. A crocodile can go without food for two years. The crocodile can go without food for two years.
8. Female lions do about 90 percent of the hunting. A female lion does about 90 percent of the hunting.
9. An elephant can smell water that is several miles away. The elephant can smell water that is several miles away.
10. Camels have three eyelids to protect themselves from blowing sand. The camel has three eyelids to protect itself from blowing sand.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

A cheetah can run at speeds of 70 to 75 miles per hour.

Activity 20: Completing Generic Statements
1. An adult skeleton has 213 bones.
2. The heart beats more than 2.5 billion times in an average lifetime.
3. Infants blink once or twice a minute; adults blink about ten times a minute.
4. The average human head has about 100,000 hairs.
5. Adult lungs have a surface area of about 70 square meters.
6. Human thigh bones are stronger than concrete.
7. Hair is made of the same substance as fingernails.
8. A human brain uses 15 to 20 percent of the body's blood.
9. Humans have unique tongue prints and fingerprints.
10. The right side of the brain controls the left side of the body.

Think about It
1. The adult skeleton has 213 bones. Adult skeletons have 213 bones.
2. Hearts beat more than 2.5 billion times in an average lifetime. A heart beats more than 2.5 billion times in an average lifetime.
3. An infant blinks once or twice a minute; an adult blinks about ten times a minute. The infant blinks once or twice a minute; the adult blinks about ten times a minute.
4. Average human heads have about 100,000 hairs.
5. Statement 5 cannot be rewritten because the subject has to stay plural.
6. A human thigh bone is stronger than concrete. The human thigh bone is stronger than concrete.
7. Statement 7 cannot be rewritten because hair is a noncount noun in this instance.
8. Human brains use 15 to 20 percent of the body's blood.
9. A human has unique tongue prints and fingerprints. The human has unique tongue prints and fingerprints.

Activity 21: Writing Generic Statements
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. A wireless keyboard is very useful.
2. A piano needs to be tuned.
3. A good friend keeps secrets.
4. American food is popular.
5. Homework is important to do.
6. New technology comes along every day.
7. A cactus needs very little water.
8. Universities today can be very large.
9. The giraffe is the tallest land animal.
10. The palm tree grows in warm climates.

Activity 22: Error Corrections
1. Fifty years ago, the bathing suits were made of cotton.
2. I think the women shouldn't work.
3. The Parents need to guide their children.
4. A (or The) Nile crocodile can stay underwater for more than an hour.
5. The airplane was an important invention. (no errors)
6. The blue whale may be the largest animal that ever lived. (no errors)
7. The Children must be disciplined from an early age.
8. The French food is better than the Italian food.

Activity 23: Using Possessive Determiners
1. My parents enjoy the company of other people. Their favorite thing to do is to have people over for dinner.
2. I have two brothers, and their names are Manuel and José.
3. My first teacher was a young man. His name was Mr. Cast.
4. My aunt and uncle have three children. Their oldest child is 18.
5. My youngest sister has lots of interests, but her favorite thing to do is write plays.
6. My father and I like to prepare meals together. Our favorite dish to make is lasagna.
7. My mother and I are very close. I have always depended on her helpful advice.
8. My sister and I live in Madrid, but our parents live in Lebanon.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. My friends enjoy music. Their favorite thing to do is to go to concerts.
2. I have one sister, and her name is Carla.
3. My first teacher was an older woman. Her name was Ms. Gilbert.
4. My brother and his wife have two children. Their oldest child is 10.
5. My youngest cousin has lots of interests, but his favorite thing to do is play soccer with his friends.
6. My sister and her husband like to prepare meals together. Their favorite dish to make is paella.
7. My brother and I are very close. I have always been able to call him when I need help with something.
8. My cousins live in New York, but their parents live in California.

**Activity 24: Using Possessive Nouns**
1. About 70 percent of the earth's surface is covered by water.
2. The sun's light and warmth make it possible for life to exist on earth.
3. Mount Everest is located in South Asia's Himalayan mountain range.
4. Only half of a dolphin's brain goes to sleep. The other half stays awake to tell the animal to come up for air.
5. Goats' milk has more calcium than cows' milk.
6. Everyone's hair turns gray as they become older.
7. Los Angeles' full name is El Pueblo de Nuestra Señora la Reina de los Ángeles de Porciúncula.
8. In general, women's hearts beat faster than men's hearts.
9. Twenty-five percent of a person's bones are in the feet.
10. The world's libraries now store more than 100 million books.
11. A giraffe's neck weighs about 600 pounds (272 kilograms).
12. Two scientists shared this year's Nobel Prize in physics (2010).
13. You can drive from New York to Los Angeles in about a week's time.
14. A computer's memory is similar to a human's—it can memorize both short and long things.

**Activity 25: Noticing Quantifiers**

**Agree/disagree answers will vary.**
1. It takes only a few days to learn a new language.
2. Zoos and aquariums are fun for people of all ages.
3. Sleeping five hours a night is plenty of sleep.
4. If you want to be healthy, you should avoid both coffee and tea.
5. There's no good reason to ban cigarettes.
6. You can enjoy the outdoors in any weather.
7. Coffee gives you energy but it only lasts for a few hours.
8. All young people should have the opportunity to travel abroad.
9. Most people like potato chips and French fries, but neither food is good for you.
10. There are many ways to look at any situation.
11. All students should be encouraged to study several languages.
12. Automobiles improve our lives in many ways, but they also cause a lot of problems.
13. A lot of stress is a bad thing, but a little stress can be a good thing.
14. It's impossible to have good relationships with other people when there is no trust.
15. Even if you don't watch much television, you still see many advertisements each day.
16. People should eat a lot of vegetables, just a little meat, and no sweets.

**Think about It**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quantifier + singular count noun</th>
<th>Quantifier + plural count noun</th>
<th>Quantifier + noncount noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>no good reason any day</td>
<td>a few days all ages</td>
<td>plenty of sleep both coffee and tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>all hours young people</td>
<td>any weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>most people many languages</td>
<td>neither food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a lot of problems</td>
<td>a lot of stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>other people many advertisements</td>
<td>a little stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vegetables</td>
<td>no trust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>no sweets</td>
<td>much television</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Activity 26: Choosing Quantifiers**

**Answers will vary.**
1. In my opinion, there should be a few free universities in every country.
2. I think that many famous universities don't provide a good education to their students.
3. In my opinion, a university should encourage students to look at several career paths.
4. Many people go to a university because they don't know what else to do.
5. I think that every college student should take physical education classes.
6. I think that college students need plenty of free time to explore new ideas.
7. Every university student should work for a few hours a week in school.
8. I think that all students should take a year off before they start college.
9. In my opinion, students should take only a few classes outside of their major course of study.
10. Every student should get a free education.
11. I believe the Internet helps provide more opportunities for education.
12. Students should be able to attend any university they choose.
13. I think that students should spend less time taking tests.

**Write about It**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:
1. I think students should not decide their major course of study until their third year of college.
2. In my opinion, universities should offer students more weekend activities.

**Activity 27: Using Quantifiers**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:
1. I have a few things to do tonight.
2. I read several good books last year.
3. I get some mail every week.
4. Some people in my family live far away from me.
5. I work many hours a week.
6. I'm happy when I have a little money.
7. I saw a few good movies last year.
8. There are many countries that I want to visit someday.
9. There are no interesting things to do in this neighborhood.
10. I had plenty of free time yesterday.
11. When I want to have some fun, I sometimes call my friends to go hiking.
12. When I have a little free time, I like to read a book.

Activity 28: Using Other
1. Living in another/the other country gives you the opportunity to learn many new things.
2. Today, we have greater access to information from around the world than at any other/the other period in history.
3. Self-discipline is necessary for success, but other/the other things such as talent, patience, and confidence are important, too.
4. If you want to lose weight, you should avoid eating cakes, cookies, and other/some other sweet things.
5. In many parts of the U.S., people speak and hear only English. They never hear another/any other languages spoken, and they don't see any value in learning to speak another/the other language.
6. My father often told me to treat the other/other people the way that I wanted to be treated. Now, whenever I have a problem with another/other person, I think of that advice. I don't try to change some other/the other person, but I try to understand his or her point of view. This helps me get along with another/most other people.
7. Television and radio are similar in some ways but very different in the other/some other ways. For example, fictional shows are popular on television, but you are more likely to hear music and talk shows on the radio. Most other/Another difference between radio and television is the way people use them. People don't usually do another/the other things while they are watching television, but they do when they are listening to the radio.

Think about It

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quantifier + singular count noun</th>
<th>Quantifier + plural count noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>another country</td>
<td>other things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any other period</td>
<td>other sweet things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>another language</td>
<td>any other languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>another person</td>
<td>other people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the other person</td>
<td>most other people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>another difference</td>
<td>some other ways</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 29: Determiner or Pronoun?
1. In Europe, most people hear languages other than their own. And many speak more than one language.
2. The majority of New Yorkers speak English as a first language, and many more are fluent in one other.
3. Traveling from one country to another used to take days or weeks.
4. It's not fair that some workers do all the work while others are lazy.
5. In many offices, a few people do all the work while the others are wasting time.
6. Lazy people try to get more money for doing less work than other people.
7. Some kids like to study, but most would rather watch TV.
8. When children play games, they learn to interact with others.
9. Parents today have less time and energy to give to their children.
10. Ads tell us that some products work better than others.
11. Fast food is usually high in sodium and fat, and both are bad for your health.
12. Most bacteria are harmless, and a few are even helpful to humans.

Think about It
1. many = many people
2. more = more New Yorkers; other = language
3. another = another country
4. others = other workers
5. others = other people
6. most = most kids
7. others = other people
8. others = other products
9. both = sodium and fat
10. a few = a few bacteria

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
In Europe, most people hear languages other than their own, and many speak more than one language. This is because European countries are very close to each other, so students usually learn foreign languages at an early age.

Activity 30: Using Quantifiers
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Most teachers give some homework, but some don't give any. Only a few give a lot!
2. Most students are happy to do their homework, but a few think it's a waste of time.
3. Most people communicate online or by text, but some still like to communicate by phone or in person.
4. Most people like soccer, but some like baseball, and others prefer basketball.
5. Most of my classmates have brown hair, but a few have blond hair, and one has purple hair!
6. Most of them speak Spanish, but one speaks Japanese, and another speaks Thai.

Activity 31: Error Correction
1. We knew there were a many opportunities here.
2. I have another sister who is two years younger than me.
3. You can get information about all famous people on the Internet.
4. I had to speak in front of the other students in my class.
5. It's hard to learn another language like English.
6. I wish I had a lot of money.
7. I don't have a work experience in this field.
8. My sister believes all people are good.
9. Algebra is not an easy subject for most students.
10. Each season has different weather.
11. I think I need to find the another job.
12. At the school where I work, the most children like to play games outdoors.

Activity 32: Quantifiers with and without Of
Jamestown, Virginia
The English formed a settlement at Jamestown, Virginia in 1607. They chose the area because there were a few rivers nearby, the water was deep, and the native tribes didn't live there. Unfortunately, much of...
11. I don't know the names of any of the best restaurants in my native country.

12. I have visited many of the big cities in my native country.

13. I don't email either of my parents very often.

14. I am not younger than any of my siblings.

15. I know all of my classmates' names.

16. I am in touch with most of my cousins.

17. I don't live near any of my relatives.

18. I have seen or read some of William Shakespeare's plays.

19. My friends and I enjoy all of the same activities.

20. In the evening, I spend a little of my time working on a computer.

Activity 35: Using the Correct Verb
1. Most of the people in my class are from South America.
2. None of the movies that she recommended was interesting to me.
3. All of the bad things that happened on that day were my fault.
4. Several of the things he said were untrue.
5. Many of my friends from high school want to visit me here.
6. Some of her advice was helpful but not all of it.
7. Most of the movie was pretty good, but I didn't like the ending.
8. Every one of my students was able to pass the test.
9. One of the students in my class is trilingual.
10. Some but not all of my money is in the bank.
11. Each of the schools sends two teams of students to the debate.
12. All of the information in this article is incorrect.
13. Neither of my parents knows how to speak English.
14. Most of his books are science fiction stories and mysteries.

Activity 36: Using Quantifiers with Pronouns
1. New York has more than 20 different subway lines. Some of them were built more than 100 years ago.
2. Some of New York's subway system runs above ground, but much of it operates beneath the city.
3. During the 1930s, bridges were built all over the U.S. Many of them are still used today.
4. Canada is building a new bridge to Detroit, Michigan. The Canadian government believes that the bridge is a good investment, so it is willing to pay for almost all of it.
5. Public transit reduces traffic and pollution for everyone, but few of us are willing to stop driving.
6. Because of budget cuts, public transit is being reduced in many communities. Several small towns could lose some or all of it within a year.
7. Suburban commuters in Copenhagen have many options for traveling to work. However, most of them choose to drive.
8. The majority of people say they enjoy driving to work. However, as gas becomes more expensive, each of us will need to explore alternatives.
9. Mopeds have become the number-one method of transportation in Vietnam. However, driving one of them in city traffic can be difficult.

Think about It
In sentences 5 and 8, us refers to people in general, including ourselves.

Activity 37: Choosing Quantifiers
A recent newspaper headline read: “Cat Burglar on the Loose!” However, this wasn’t another of those stories about a thief who climbs up the outsides of buildings. This was about an actual cat.

When Paula Steen discovered that she was missing one of her necklaces, she thought she had lost it. However, when more of her jewelry disappeared, she started to get worried. One day, she was talking with one of her neighbors at the door. Neither of them noticed a neighbor’s cat, Mimi, sneak into Paula’s house. After a few minutes, Mimi returned with some earrings sticking out of her mouth.

Both women were surprised, but then immediately started laughing. They went to that neighbor’s house and, after a quick search, found Paula’s jewelry in Mimi’s basket. All of it was there—along with other neighbors’ jewelry. When the women told their friends, none of them believed the story. But then Mimi did it again—this time she stole some towels and other household items!
Think about It

Neither of is followed by them, which refers to Paula Steen and the neighbor she was talking to. All of is followed by it, which refers to Paula’s jewelry. None of is followed by them, which refers to the women’s friends.

Write about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

A recent newspaper headline read: “Cat Burglar on the Loose!” However, this wasn’t one of those stories about a thief who climbs up the outsides of buildings. This was about an actual cat.

When Paula Steen discovered that she was missing a necklace, she thought she had lost it. However, when some more jewelry disappeared, she started to get worried. One day, she was talking with a neighbor at the door. Neither noticed a neighbor’s cat, Mimi, sneak into Paula’s house. After a few minutes, Mimi returned with a bracelet sticking out of her mouth.

The women were surprised, but then immediately started laughing. They went to that neighbor’s house and, after a quick search, found Paula’s jewelry in Mimi’s basket. All of it was there—along with another neighbor’s jewelry. When the women told their friends, none of them believed the story. But then Mimi did it again—this time she stole a few towels and other household items!

Activity 38: Error Correction
1. Most of the time I get up before six.
2. None of my friends thinks I should go to a school far away.
3. Last year I had to make one of the most important decisions in my life.
4. Birthdays are one of a special day for young people.
5. Please give a paper to each one person.
6. For many of my friends, attending college won’t be possible.
7. Most of the time I get up before six.
8. Every one of the books that I read was different.
9. None of the purposes of art is to make people think.
10. Some of the purposes of art is to make people think.

Activity 39: Using Simple Quantifiers in Conversation
1. A: So, did you get some sleep?
   B: No, not much. Unfortunately.
   A: Me neither. I woke up at 6:00 and couldn’t get back to sleep.
2. A: Would you like some juice to drink?
   B: Sure, I’ll have some. Thanks!
3. A: Hey, you don’t look so good. Are you OK?
   B: I ate too much. I think I need to sit down.
4. A: If gas prices go down, I think we’ll save some money on our trip.
   B: I guess, maybe a little.
5. A: I’m excited about the trip. So everyone in our class is coming?
   B: Yeah, all of them. It’ll be great!
6. A: I’m going to get rid of this coat. Do you want it?
   B: Oh, thanks. It’s nice, but I have too many of them.
7. A: How many chairs should I set up?
   B: A lot! It’s going to be a really big event.
8. A: Everybody’s sick these days. Have a lot of your classmates been out lately?
   B: Fortunately, not very many.
9. A: Hey, the ice cream is gone! How much did you eat?
   B: All of it! Sorry.
10. A: How’s your business doing? Have you gotten some new customers?
    B: Well, just a few, unfortunately.
11. A: I hear they’re starting a new program at your university.
    Have you heard anything about it?
   B: Yes, but very little. It’s a difficult language.
12. A: Do you speak Japanese?
   B: No, not a lot, actually.

Activity 40: Describing Amounts with Measure Words
1. Next week’s weather could cause a load of trouble.
2. I’ve seen this film hundreds of times.
3. A handful of people came to protest the event.
4. I’m supposed to get a ton of money at the end of the month.
5. I don’t want to go see the boss. He’s just going to give me a mountain of extra work to do.
6. When I went to the store, there were a bunch of people already waiting in line.
7. My job started out slow at first, but now I’m getting a ton of business.
8. I have a pile of unpaid bills. What am I going to do?
9. Everyone appreciates a little bit of kindness.
10. They’ve made a website that has a bunch of information on it.
11. The computers at the public library have loads of kid-friendly software.
12. A bunch of us are going to the movie at 3:00 on Saturday.
13. The writing center is there for students who need a bit of help.
14. Last year I got piles of tomatoes from my garden.
15. I have hundreds of papers to write before the end of the semester.

Activity 41: Using Quantifiers in Academic Contexts

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. The school will pay for most of the travel expenses.
   The school will pay for almost all of the travel expenses.
2. A couple of errors were discovered during review. A few errors were discovered during review.
3. Despite a new advertising campaign, there was hardly any improvement in sales.
   Despite a new advertising campaign, there was little improvement in sales.
4. A lot of the expert’s argument is based on guesswork. Much of the expert’s argument is based on guesswork.
5. Nearly all of the experiments have proven nothing. Most of the experiments have proven nothing.
6. We can find a bunch of information about the environment online. We can find a great deal of information about the environment online.
7. A bit of knowledge can be more dangerous than no knowledge at all. A little knowledge can be more dangerous than no knowledge at all.
8. The exhibition was attended by plenty of people. The exhibition was attended by plenty of people.
9. The situation could easily be resolved with a bit of understanding. The situation could easily be resolved with little understanding.
10. There aren’t a lot of scientists who now subscribe to that view. There aren’t many scientists who now subscribe to that view.
11. We made a handful of attempts to contact the head of the company. We made a few attempts to contact the head of the company.
12. I have spent a ton of time reading about the problem. I have spent a large amount of time reading about the problem.
Write about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. Next week's weather could cause a great deal of difficulty.
2. I've seen this film a number of times.
3. A few people came to protest the event.
4. I'm supposed to get a large amount of money at the end of the month.
5. I don't want to go see the boss. He's just going to give me a great deal of extra work to do.
6. When I went to the store, there were a number of people already waiting in line.
7. My job started out slow at first, but now I'm getting a great deal of business.
8. I have a number of unpaid bills. What am I going to do?
9. Everyone appreciates a little kindness.
10. They've made a website that has a great deal of information on it.
11. The computers at the public library have a great deal of software that is appropriate for children.
12. A number of us are going to the movie at 3:00 on Saturday.
13. The writing center is there for students who need a little help.
14. Last year I got a large number of tomatoes from my garden.
15. I have a number of papers to write before the end of the semester.

Activity 42: Recognizing Quantified Statements

1. Many people think a bicycle is a toy for children, not a serious machine for cardiovascular exercise.
2. Most scientists believe our climate is changing because we produce too much CO₂.
3. Researchers believe that violent video games cause behavior problems in some children.
4. Most Americans get the protein in their diet from meat.
5. In a few Western countries, people believe that parents should let teenagers make their own decisions.
6. The negative effects of smoking became clear after the completion of some long-term studies in the 1990s.
7. Many vegetarians say that eating meat is bad for health, wastes resources, and creates pollution.
8. Most of the parents in a recent study believe that homework is helpful, not harmful.
9. Some people believe that actors and professional athletes are paid too much.
10. Most wind energy comes from windmills that are as tall as a 20-story building and have 60-meter-long blades.

Think about It

They are important because they tell you whether the statement is true for many, most, some, or a few people or items. In other words, they make the statement more accurate.

Activity 43: Making Accurate Statements

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. Many benefits of a college education are well known.
2. Some people from low-income families don't go to college or earn a degree.
3. Most children of educated parents begin elementary school with basic knowledge.
4. Some people with only a high school education need public assistance, but most college graduates do not.
5. Many college graduates pay 80 percent more in taxes each year than typical high school graduates.
6. Many people with advanced degrees have never smoked, have quit, or are trying to quit.
7. Many people with less education do not exercise, while many people with higher education do.
8. A large number of college graduates reported that they were very satisfied with their jobs.
9. More high school dropouts said their jobs were not satisfying.
10. More people with low education levels lose their jobs in difficult economic times.

Write about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. In college, many students meet people and make connections that can help them find a job when they graduate.
2. Many colleges have job placement programs to help students find jobs when they graduate.
3. Many of the skills that students learn in college are the skills employers want job applicants to have.

Wrap-Up

A

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. A good leader has the ability to influence other people.
2. Most leaders have a few special strengths.
3. The best leaders have a little modesty.
4. Some leaders have none of the communication skills that leaders need.
5. More leaders need some lessons in how to be good leaders.
6. Most good leaders care about their followers.
7. All leaders should want to keep learning and improving.
8. Every leader should want a chance to show his or her leadership abilities.

B

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

One of the world's largest art museums is in Saint Petersburg. Many people died there during World War II. It is one of the largest cities in Russia. From 1712 to 1918, it was the capital of Russia. St. Petersburg has dozens of islands and more than 500 bridges. It is one of Russia's biggest industrial centers.

C

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characters</th>
<th>Places</th>
<th>Events</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sophie Scholl, her brother, Hans</td>
<td>Munich</td>
<td>distributes pamphlets, arrested, interrogated, executed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert Mohr (interrogator)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The movie *Sophie Scholl: The Final Days* is based on a true story. It is about a brother and sister in Munich during World War II. With some of their friends, they belong to a resistance group called The White Rose. One day, Sophie and her brother, Hans, take some stacks of antiwar pamphlets to their university and leave them for other students to find. With one of their friends, they are arrested. A Gestapo officer, Robert Mohr, interrogates Sophie. The interrogation is very suspenseful. Sophie does well, and she is just about to be released when her brother confesses. Then she says many things about her true beliefs against the war. Sophie, Hans, and their friend are quickly convicted at a trial and are executed.

D

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

This graph shows how many hours a week students study and do homework. According to the graph, most of these students set aside between 5 and 14 hours for homework and studying. However, some set aside 4 hours or less. Only a few study more than 14 hours.
Activity 2: Identifying Uses of Noun Phrases
1. Everyone in my family lives in the same town. subject
2. I have many cousins. object of verb
3. My parents met in high school. object of preposition
4. I am the only person in my family who has lived abroad. complement
5. My father works as an engineer. object of preposition
6. My mother is a doctor. complement
7. On special holidays, my whole family gets together. object of preposition
8. I visit my aunts and uncles whenever I go home. object of verb
9. My mother-in-law is one of the nicest people I know. subject
10. When my brother and I were children, we played basketball all the time. subject
11. Not all sisters and brothers are good friends. complement
12. My parents sent all of their children to good universities. object of verb

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
My grandfather was a dentist. (my grandfather is the subject; a dentist is the complement)
My cousins all live in the same big city. (My cousins is the subject; the same big city is the object of a preposition)
My brother and I used to collect stamps together. (My brother and I is the subject; stamps is the object of the verb)
Someday I’m going to live in another country. (I is the subject; another country is the object of a preposition)

Activity 3: Understanding Noun Phrase Word Order
1. I have a lot of good friends.
2. I wish I had a few million dollars.
3. I can speak several foreign languages.
4. There is a large grocery store near my house.
5. I would like to have a government job someday.
6. In high school, my favorite subject was biology.
7. I am a famous movie star.
8. I don’t need any new clothes.
9. I would like to live in a modern apartment building.
10. I do many different things to stay healthy.

**Activity 4: Exploring the Parts of a Noun Phrase**
I. M. Pei, one of the most famous architects in the world, was born in China in 1917. Pei came to the U.S. to study architecture when he was 17 years old. He worked for several years as an assistant professor at Harvard University while he was studying for his master’s degree in architecture. Then he joined a New York real estate development corporation called Webb & Knapp in 1948. In 1955, Pei started his own architectural office. His designs soon became well-known for their geometric patterns and their unique use of glass. Among his famous building designs are the East Building of the National Gallery of Art in Washington and the New York City Convention Center. His accomplishments also include updating the Louvre in Paris with a glass pyramid in one of its courtyards.

**Activity 5: Finding the Main Noun**
1. the tallest person in your family
2. your favorite part of the Olympic Games
3. a member of a sports team
4. the second month of the year
5. a city that you would like to visit
6. your favorite subject in high school
7. the best job that you have ever had
8. your favorite thing for breakfast
9. one thing that you really need
10. the last item that you bought

**Activity 6: Identifying Noun Phrases**
Students will circle the main noun in each underlined noun phrase in the Think about It activity.
1. The part of your leg that you stand on is your foot.
2. The back part of your foot is your heel.
3. The part of your face that you use to smell things is your nose.
4. The body part above your neck is your head.
5. The five things on your foot are your toes.
6. The piece of skin that covers your eye is your eyelid.
7. The two things that you see with are your eyes.
8. The main part of your body (not your head, arms, and legs) is your torso.
9. The part of your body that pumps your blood around inside is your heart.
10. The part that bends in the middle of your leg is your knee.
11. The body part between your hip and your knee is your thigh.
12. The thin, hard part at the end of your finger is your fingernail.

**Activity 7: Adding Information to Pronouns**
1. Did you buy anything at the grocery store yesterday?
2. Do you know everything in this book?
3. When was the last time you ate something that tasted really good?
4. Did you watch anything on TV last night?
5. Do you know anyone who lives in Canada?
6. Do you like movies? Can you name one that you saw last year?
7. What is the best magazine for those who want accurate news?
8. Does anyone in your family live in Europe?
9. Do you think everyone should get medical care or just those who can pay for it?
10. Many people have seen an elephant in a zoo, but have you ever seen one in the wild?

**Activity 8: Using Adjectives**
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I have a long list of the job qualifications.
2. A recent study in the Journal of Modern Science provides new information on this topic.
3. Volunteering teaches kids a valuable lesson.
4. The main sources of energy today are fossil fuels such as natural gas, oil, and coal.
5. Tai chi is a graceful type of exercise.
6. Archeologists discovered a lost pyramid at an ancient burial site near Cairo, Egypt.
7. This course covers a wide range of topics.
8. The sun is a renewable source of energy.
9. English is the international language of business.
10. We now have vaccines to prevent the spread of some deadly diseases.

**Activity 9: Noticing –ing or –ed Adjectives**
1. Do all universities have required courses?
2. What are some examples of industrialized nations?
3. Are there many unemployed people in your city?
4. Can you name an outstanding restaurant?
5. Does it bother you to ride in a crowded subway car?
6. What’s an interesting topic for a class discussion?
7. Do you like to have unexpected visitors at home?
8. Did you learn some complicated math formulas in school?
9. What was the most exciting period in history?
10. What should two friends do when they have opposing views about something?

**Think about It**
1. a. The news shocked us.
   b. The silence showed that we were shocked.
2. a. The situation confused everyone.
   b. Irene was confused.
3. a. The airways are irritated, so we cough to clear them.
   b. I talk too much, so it irritates people.
4. a. Heat can surprisingly annoy people who work in Antarctica.
   b. She wasn’t expecting us, so she was surprised.
5. a. My husband and I use a less strict approach.
   b. I want to relax when I am on vacation.
6. a. The information interests people.
   b. This study interests me.
7. a. This part of the movie excited me.
   b. The children sounded excited.
8. a. He missed the opportunity.
   b. The report is missing too much information.
9. a. She was pleased because she got the job.
   b. They painted the house. The new color pleases them.

Activity 11: Learning Multi-Word Adjectives
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. big-name = famous
   Johnny Depp is a big-name actor.
2. front-row = something in the first row at the front
   When I go to the theater, I like to sit in a front-row seat.
3. hair-raising = something that makes you afraid
   For me, riding a roller coaster is a hair-raising experience.
4. single-story = a building that has only one story
   In the suburbs, many people live in single-story houses.
5. slow-moving = something that is moving slowly
   I hate commuting to work in the morning because I always get stuck in slow-moving traffic.
6. long-term = happening over a long period of time
   Researchers have not studied the long-term effects of cell phone use.
7. carefully planned = something that has been planned carefully
   When I speak, I make sure I have a carefully planned presentation to show my audience.
8. newly married = married recently
   Newly married couples often like to spend a lot of their time together.
9. eye-catching = something that attracts your attention
   My favorite photographs include eye-catching colors.
10. law-abiding = following the law
    Parents like to raise children who are law-abiding citizens.
11. well-organized = well-planned or arranged
    A well-organized desk looks professional.
12. hard-working = working with effort and energy
    Most families are hard-working families who provide for themselves.
13. well-behaved = polite and using good manners
    Well-behaved children are a pleasure to spend time with.
14. newly opened = just opened recently
    The newly opened zoo has plenty of space for the animals.
15. poor-quality = of low quality or in a bad condition
    The poor-quality parts broke quickly.
16. award-winning = having gotten a prize for doing something well
    She has written several award-winning poems.

Think about It

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective + noun</th>
<th>Adverb + -ed word</th>
<th>Adverb + -ing word</th>
<th>Noun + -ed word</th>
<th>Noun + -ing word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big-name</td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>slow-moving</td>
<td>hair-raising</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front-row</td>
<td>planned</td>
<td>moving</td>
<td>raising</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single-story</td>
<td>newly married</td>
<td></td>
<td>eye-catching</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long-term</td>
<td>well-behaved</td>
<td></td>
<td>catching</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poor-quality</td>
<td>newly opened</td>
<td></td>
<td>law-abiding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>award-winning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 12: Using Multi-Word Adjectives
1. How often do you eat at fast-food restaurants?
2. Would you rather eat in a restaurant or have a home-cooked meal?
3. What is one awful-tasting food?
4. Puzzles are one type of mind-stimulating game. What are some others?
5. Trivial Pursuit is a knowledge-based game. You need to know a lot of facts. Can you think of any other games like this?
6. What are some common time-consuming activities?
7. Is there a highly favored team for the next World Cup?
8. Why are action-packed movies so popular?
9. What is the fastest-growing sport?
10. Would you rather have a full-time job or a part-time one?
11. What are the advantages of working in a family-owned business?
12. Do hard-working people always succeed?
13. Should all students go to a four-year university after secondary school?
14. Should education be a lifelong experience?
15. Should high-achieving students study separately from average students?

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Do you try to shop at family-owned businesses?
Do you have many lifelong friends?

Activity 13: Noticing Noun + Noun
1. Singapore’s Changi Airport has won many awards from travel groups.
2. The airport has many comfortable areas for sleeping or watching TV, as well as work desks and free Internet service.
3. If you are tired, you can rent a nap room for a few hours.
4. The airport offers a free bus tour of Singapore.
5. There is a hotel with a rooftop hot tub.
6. There are several movie theaters.
7. The airport has a butterfly garden and an orchid garden.
8. If you spend $10 at one of the many airport stores, you get free admission to the four-story tube slide (an enclosed slide made from a long tube).
9. Terminal 3 is a little city with a pharmacy, grocery store, flower shop, and jewelry stores. It even has an indoor amusement park for kids.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
It rained when we were in London, so we took a bus tour instead of walking.
Can you stop at the grocery store on your way home, please?
When we were children, my brother and I loved to visit the amusement park.

Activity 14: Forming Noun + Noun Combinations
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
- business community: health food
- business center: health insurance
- car insurance: health plan
- city police: health report
- community center: insurance plan
- family business: school food
- family car: world business

84 UNIT 9 ELEMENTS of SUCCESS • Student Book 3
Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
food bank
food chain
food court
food pantry
food poisoning
food processor
food science
food service

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
For my mother's birthday, we bought her a food processor.
My sister exercises all the time and eats a lot of healthy food.
About once a week, I let my children eat junk food.
Don't eat at that restaurant—Nan said she got food poisoning there!
My cousin works at the food court in the mall.

Activity 15: Using Noun + Noun
1. Which country has a good health-care system?
2. Is the post office a federal government agency?
3. What do you think a sleep expert does?
4. How many people in your family are second language speakers?
5. What does a project manager do?
6. What can you put on an insect bite to make it stop itching?
7. What is the normal body temperature?
8. Do you usually take an afternoon nap?
9. Do you use plastic or cloth grocery bags?
10. Have you ever written an essay for a college class?
11. Are you currently a university student?
12. What are some cold symptoms?

Activity 16: Identifying the Main Noun
1. A bristlecone pine tree in California is the oldest recorded living tree. It is believed to be more than 4,600 years old.
2. The Large Hadron Collider is the world's highest-energy particle accelerator.
3. In 2012, Joe Ayoob broke the long-distance paper airplane flight record when he threw a paper airplane 226 feet, 10 inches.
4. Many scientists believe that an asteroid impact caused the extinction of the dinosaurs.
5. The first coast-to-coast airplane flight in the U.S. took place in 1911 and lasted 49 days.
6. Fish species loss is accelerating, and soon we may have no more fish to eat from the oceans.
7. Pollution causes poor air quality, and it can be bad for your health.
8. The orbiting Spitzer Space Telescope found water vapor in the atmosphere of a distant star.
9. Some scientists think that music training may help students with language problems.
10. The fastest-growing plant in the world is the giant timber bamboo from China. It reaches its adult height of up to 18.3 meters in just two months.
11. Movie director James Cameron broke the world depth record when he descended nearly 7 miles in the Pacific Ocean.

Activity 17: Noticing Appositives
Gustavo Dudamel, the 31-year-old Venezuelan conductor, is at the center of the classical music world. In 2009, Dudamel became the music director of the Los Angeles Philharmonic, a leading orchestra in the U.S. Yet as famous as Dudamel is for his conducting, he is also much admired for his leadership in music education. He is one of the leaders of El Sistema, Venezuela’s widely praised music education program. El Sistema has put musical instruments in the hands of about 250,000 Venezuelan children. Many of them play in [the program’s top orchestra], the Simón Bolivar Symphony Orchestra [Dudamel], a graduate of El Sistema, is the orchestra’s conductor. Whether leading musicians young or old, Gustavo Dudamel is the most charismatic young conductor in the world today.

Activity 18: Adding Appositives
1. Central Park, New York City’s largest open space, is a model for city parks around the world.
2. The Great Pyramid, a 147-meter-high tomb, was completed in 2600 BCE.
3. The International Court of Justice (World Court) is located in the Netherlands.
4. The sun—a star made of intensely hot gases—is the only source of light and the main source of heat in the solar system.
5. Antarctica, the frozen continent, surrounds and covers the South Pole.
6. The lower slopes of the Alps—a favorite destination for skiers—are covered with forests.
7. Honey, the only food that never spoils, was once used as a kind of money.
8. Computers work with a number of different I/O (input/output) devices to exchange information.
9. Unlike a fad—a sudden and briefly popular behavior—trends may become popular slowly and may have long-term effects.
10. Toothpaste, a 4,000-year-old invention, was originally made with vinegar and ground stone.
11. About half of the world’s population speaks a language that originally comes from Proto-Indo-European, a language spoken well before 4000 BCE.
12. As far back as 3600 BCE, the Sumerian people used simple wheels (pieces of wood with rounded corners).

Think about It
In sentences 3, 5, and 8, the appositive gives another name for the noun phrase.
In sentences 1, 2, 4, 6, 7, and 9–12, the appositive describes the noun phrase.

Activity 19: Adding Information with Appositives
Punctuation will vary.
1. Seoul, the capital of South Korea, is located on the Han River.
2. Much of the Sahara, the second largest desert in the world, is uninhabited.
3. Asia (the largest of the seven continents) is home to more than one out of every two people in the world.
4. Two countries in South America—Bolivia and Colombia—were named for famous people.
5. La Paz—a city in Bolivia—is at about the same height as the top of Japan’s Mount Fuji.
6. Venice, one of the most beautiful cities in Italy, is slowly sinking.
7. Curitiba, a city in Brazil, has one of the best public bus systems in the world.
8. The Taj Mahal, a mausoleum in India, is one of the most popular tourist attractions in the world.
9. Los Angeles (the largest city in California) is a major center for shipping, manufacturing, and finance.
10. Ayers Rock (a popular tourist attraction in Australia) is located in the center of the country.
Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Chongqing, my birthplace, is located on the Jialing River.
Chongqing, known as the Fog City, has 100 days of fog per year.
Chongqing—a major transportation hub—has an airport, a river port, and multiple train stations.

Activity 20: Combining Information with Appositives
1. Stephen Hawking, a renowned theoretical physicist, writes about black holes.
2. Fred LeVerentz, a 72-year-old mountain climber, has climbed mountains all over the world.
3. Emily Dickinson, a famous American poet, published only seven poems during her life.
4. Irène Curie, the second woman in history to win a Nobel Prize in science, was the daughter of the first woman to win the same prize.
5. Yuri Gagarin, the first person to orbit the earth, died seven years later in an airplane crash.
6. Aesop, a Greek storyteller in the sixth century BCE, used animal stories to teach lessons about life.
7. Amelia Earhart, the first woman to cross the Atlantic Ocean in an airplane, disappeared while trying to fly around the world.
8. Mahatma Gandhi, a symbol of the power of peace, led the nonviolent movement for independence in India.
9. Alfred Hitchcock, one of the most famous movie directors in history, made many film classics, including North by Northwest and The Birds.
10. Agatha Christie, a British crime writer of novels, short stories, and plays, is the best-selling novelist of all time.
11. The Rolling Stones, the longest-performing rock band of all time, first performed in 1962.
12. Lang Lang, the superstar Chinese piano player, loves opera, jazz, and hip-hop.
13. Andrew Johnson, the seventeenth president of the U.S., was a tailor before he was president.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Queen Victoria, the longest-reigning British monarch, celebrated her Diamond Jubilee in 1897.
Nelson Mandela (the first black president of South Africa) was a political prisoner for 27 years.
Harriet Tubman, a former slave, worked to end slavery in the U.S.

Activity 21: Adding Prepositional Phrases
Students will circle the main noun in each completed noun phrase in the Think About It activity.
1. The most important qualities of a good parent are patience and a sense of humor.
2. Traveling to foreign countries is valuable for a number of reasons.
3. The primary goal of any business is to make money.
4. Some technological advances of the twentieth century had a negative effect on the earth's atmosphere.
5. You can easily learn about life in other countries by looking on the Internet.
6. The land in the center of a city should be a public park.
7. My teachers have been important figures in my life.
8. Fathers play an important role in their children's lives.
9. Stress is one of the worst things for your health.
10. There are many opportunities for work and entertainment in a big city.
11. There is very little need for money in today's world.
12. There should be a separate section for children on all public transportation.

Activity 22: Noticing Prepositional Phrases
Answers to the question will vary.
1. A team of researchers recently found the bones of four different kinds of dinosaurs at the same site in New Mexico.
2. The first time that sales of computers to homes in the U.S. were greater than sales of computers to businesses was in 1994.
3. As a person ages, the thickness of each hair on the head gets smaller.
4. Many species of fish in the oceans are now disappearing.
5. A meteorite crashed through the roof of a house in New Zealand.
6. The placement of an ice pack on an insect bite will relieve the itch.
7. The caffeine in three cups of coffee or tea may help to maintain mental sharpness in older women.
8. Researchers at the Erasmus University Medical School in Rotterdam, the Netherlands, found that boiled coffee significantly increased cholesterol.
9. The most recent survey of time use in the U.S. suggests that women still do most of the work at home.
10. Everything in the factories of the future will be run by smarter software.
11. A fifth of respondents to a Chinese local-newspaper survey said they had over 5,000 yuan of digital property.
12. One researcher found that managers with more money invested in their companies take fewer vacations.

Activity 23: Identifying Prepositional Phrases in Noun Phrases
Ocean storms develop when the temperature in one area is different from the temperature in another nearby area. Warm air rises and cool air falls, creating a difference in atmospheric pressure.

If the pressure changes in a large area, winds start to blow in a huge circle. High-pressure air is pulled toward a low-pressure center and thick clouds form. As the storm gains speed and moves over the ocean, very heavy rain begins to fall. And storms can get even stronger if they are moving over warm waters. Under certain conditions, an ocean storm can strengthen and become a hurricane. The center of the storm, known as the eye, is fairly calm. However, the strongest, fastest winds of a hurricane blow in the area around the eye known as the eyewall, which can be about 16 to 80 kilometers wide.

Winds speeds in the most severe ocean storms have reached more than 250 kilometers per hour. Some storms have produced more than 150 centimeters of rain. Many ocean storms cause high waves and ocean surges. An ocean surge is a constant movement of water that can reach as high as 6 meters or more. This can cause major damage to shore areas.

Think about It
*In one area* and *in another area* explain which temperature.
*In atmospheric pressure* explains what kind of difference.
*In a large area* describes where the pressure changes.
*In a huge circle* explains where the winds start to blow.
*Toward a low-pressure center* tells where the air is pulled.
*Over the ocean* tells where the storm moves.
*Over warm waters* explains where the storms can move.
*Under certain conditions* explains when an ocean storm can strengthen to become a hurricane.
*Of the storm* describes “center.”
*Of a hurricane* explains what kind of winds.
*In the area* tells where the strongest, fastest winds of a hurricane blow.
*About 16 to 80 kilometers wide* describes “the eyewall.”

Activity 25: Pronouncing Of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Of /əv/</th>
<th>Of /ə/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Do we usually have class in the middle of the day?</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Are you the owner of a red car?</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How many years of education have you had?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Who is the author of your favorite book?</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. What day of the week is it?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Do you ever watch the end of a movie first?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Do you know the rules of basketball?</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Are you a member of any organizations?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Have you ever left before the end of a movie?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Are you worried about the state of the economy?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Are you excited about the future of the country?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. What was the result of the last election?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. What’s on the cover of this textbook?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. What’s the name of the school?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Is anyone in your family the parent of a new baby?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Do you have a good sense of humor?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Is there a museum of art in your city?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. What is the definition of angry?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. How many hours of work did you do last week?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. What is your favorite time of year?</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about It
1. A day is an abstract thing.
2. A car is a nonliving thing.
3. Education is an abstract idea.
4. A book is a nonliving thing, and the possessive phrase is more than two words long.
5. A week is an abstract thing.
6. A movie is a nonliving thing.
7. Basketball is an abstract thing.
8. Organizations are nonliving things.
9. A movie is a nonliving thing.
10. The economy is an abstract idea.
11. A country is an abstract thing.
12. An election is an abstract thing, and the possessive phrase is more than two words long.
13. A textbook is a nonliving thing.
14. A school is a nonliving thing.
15. The possessive phrase is more than two words long.
16. Humor is an abstract idea.
17. Art is an abstract idea.
18. The word angry is an abstract idea.
19. Work is an abstract thing.
20. A year is an abstract thing.

Activity 26: Using Of to Show Possession
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Manatees are water animals sometimes called sea cows because of their large size and gentle nature. Although they do not have many natural predators, the actions of people have interfered with manatees in recent years. Humans’ interference with the habitats of manatees is one of the main problems. For example, the manatees of Florida no longer migrate south as they once did, but now stay near warm waters created by power plants. Another problem is boats. The paddles of a boat can cut a manatee, killing it or leaving terrible scars. This may occur partly because of the sound of a boat. Large boats emit low-frequency sounds that manatees cannot hear. However, manatees will swim away from a boat with a higher frequency, according to the findings of some researchers. Another major problem for manatees is the red tide. The growth of toxic algae causes the red tide, and the toxins damage the nervous system of the manatee.

Activity 27: Noticing Adjective Clauses
Answers to questions will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Name a type of living thing that you are afraid of, a grizzly bear.
2. Identify the countries that you have visited, Canada, the United Kingdom, France, Mexico.
3. Identify a food that you can’t stand, liver.
4. Name a place that you enjoyed visiting, Wales.
5. Name a person who you admire, Barack Obama.
6. Name a person who has helped you in an important way, my father.
7. Name a famous scientist who lived in the twentieth century, Albert Einstein.
8. Name a job that requires two or more languages, translator at the United Nations.
9. Identify a city that is near some mountains, Queenstown, New Zealand.
10. Name a tool that you can use to open a bottle, a bottle opener.
11. Think of a word that means “very good,” terrific.
12. Name an artist who is alive today, El Anatsui.

Activity 28: Adding Adjective Clauses
1. A wind turbine mechanic repairs the turbines that are on top of the 140-foot towers.
2. Food stylists arrange the food that is used in magazine advertisements.
3. A wildlife rehabilitator helps wild animals that have been injured.
4. A sports event coordinator is the person who plans special events for a game.
5. A sports psychologist helps athletes who want to improve their performance.
6. Salvage divers find things that have been lost in deep water.
7. Flight attendants assist people who are traveling by plane.
8. A dietician helps people who want to lose weight.
9. An archaeologist studies the past by studying old buildings that are buried underground.
10. In a movie, a stunt person does the dangerous things that a famous actor isn’t allowed to do.
Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Food stylists arrange the food that is used in magazine advertisements. They should have cooking skills as well as photography skills. A food stylist might work with a company to develop new recipes. After the recipes are tested, the stylist will arrange the food and kitchen accessories so the photographer can take pictures.

Activity 29: Using Adjective Clauses
1. Tycoon is a Japanese word that means “a successful businessperson.”
2. Revenue is a French word that means “the income of a government or company.”
3. Tornado is a Spanish word that means “a violent storm with strong winds that blow in a circle.”
4. Soprano is an Italian word that means “the highest singing voice.”
5. Pajamas is a Persian word that means “loose pants and a top that you wear to bed.”
6. Catsup is an English word that means “a thick sauce that is made with tomatoes.”
7. Chorus is a Greek word that means “a large group of people who sing together.”
8. Memo is a Chinese word that means “a note that you write to someone at work.”

Activity 30: Noticing Adjective Clauses
1. Are children who play sports less likely to get into trouble than children who don’t play sports?
2. What is the most important subject that students should study in high school?
3. Neighbors are the people who live near us. In your opinion, what are the qualities of a good neighbor?
4. Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? People should sometimes do things that they do not enjoy doing.
5. Countries, businesses, and schools are three areas that need good leaders. Choose one of these areas and describe the most important qualities of a leader in that area.
6. What is one skill that every person needs to learn?
7. In your opinion, what is the most important characteristic (for example, honesty, intelligence, a sense of humor) that a person can have? Why?
8. Some people choose friends who are different from themselves. Others choose friends who are similar to themselves. What are the advantages of having friends who are different from you?
9. Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? The decisions that people make quickly are always wrong.
10. Do you agree or disagree with the following statement? People should read only those books that are about real events and real people.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
One skill that every person needs to learn is typing. Most employers are looking for employees who can use a computer and other modern technology. People who can type quickly and accurately are more likely to find a good job. And keyboards aren’t just used with computers anymore. Smartphones have keyboards too, and it’s easier to use them if you know how to type.

Activity 31: Identifying Adjective Clauses
1. The nicest thing I own is a piece of jewelry from my mother.
2. Good writing is the most important skill I have learned.
3. Global warming is the most serious problem we face today.
4. There are many things I like about tennis.
5. The first thing I do in the morning is to drink a cup of coffee.
6. A good friend is someone I trust.
7. The best advice I ever received was from my father.
8. The most important aspect of a job is the money a person earns.
9. There are many different things you can do to stay healthy.
10. The worst thing an employee can do is to steal from the company.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. The nicest thing I own is a sweater from my mother.
2. Effective public speaking is the most important skill I have learned.
3. Overpopulation is the most serious problem we face today.
4. There are many things I like about swimming.
5. The first thing I do in the morning is to eat some fruit.
6. A good friend is someone I can rely on.
7. I have many friends who email me all the time.
8. There were a lot of people on the street who were wearing costumes.
9. I read an interesting article that explains the benefits of crying.
10. When I was in Turkey, I met some of my relatives who still live in my parents’ village.

Activity 32: Combining Sentences
The order of some clauses will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I have many friends who email me all the time.
2. There were a lot of people on the street who were wearing costumes.
3. I read an interesting article that explains the benefits of crying.
4. When I was in Turkey, I met some of my relatives who still live in my parents’ village.
5. My brother is a doctor who works with cancer patients.
6. Many people who eat a lot of fruit and vegetables are concerned about their health.
7. I have a good friend who is always giving me advice.
8. My brother lives in a building downtown that was once a factory.
9. An introduction is part of a book or essay that comes at the beginning.
10. Two students who were injured went to the hospital.

Activity 33: Subject/Verb Agreement
1. The six official languages of the United Nations (U.N.) are Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian, and Spanish.
2. The most common name in the world is Mohammad.
3. I read an interesting article that explains the benefits of crying.
4. When I was in Turkey, I met some of my relatives who still live in my parents’ village.
5. Seoul, the South Korean capital, means “the capital” in the Korean language.
6. One of the few people who single-handedly invented an alphabet for a living language was Sequoyah, a Cherokee Indian.
7. In Chinese, the characters (or symbols) for danger and opportunity form the word crisis.
8. Only four common words in the English language end in -dous: hazardous, horrendous, stupendous, and tremendous.
9. The only common 15-letter word in the English language that can be spelled without repeating a letter is uncopyrightable.
10. Children who study another language score higher on basic skills such as reading and math.
11. The most widely spoken languages of the Chinese language are Mandarin, Cantonese, Gan, Hakka, Min, Wu, and Xiang.
12. The longest word in the English language with all the letters in alphabetical order is almost.
13. A person who speaks several languages has more job opportunities than a person who speaks just one language.

14. The Germanic family of languages includes Danish, Dutch, English, German, and Swedish, among others.

15. Most countries in Europe have a number of regional or minority languages, some of which have become official languages.

Activity 34: Strengthening/Softening Adjectives in Speaking
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. A: Sarah is graduating next week, but I don’t know what to get her.
   B: Hmm. How about a watch?
   B: Oh, yeah. That’s a really nice idea.
2. A: $120 for a textbook! Can you believe it?
   B: Why do we need such an expensive textbook?
   A: I know. It’s ridiculous.
3. A: How did you lose your wallet?
   B: I don’t know. Sometimes I’m not a very smart person.
4. A: The snow has been falling all morning.
   B: I know—it looks like a pretty bad storm.
5. A: I think I’m going to quit my job and go back to school.
   B: Really? I don’t think that’s such a good decision.
   A: Why not?
   B: I had a really awful day, and I didn’t get much sleep last night.
7. A: Where’s Carlos today?
   B: Didn’t you hear? He was in a very serious bicycle accident.
   A: Oh, no!
8. A: Did you like the pictures I posted online?
   B: Absolutely. You’re such an amazing photographer!
9. A: What did your father want?
   B: I’m not sure. He said he had a very important question to ask me.
10. A: My phone keeps turning itself off. Do you think I should get a new one?
    B: That doesn’t sound like a very serious problem. Let me see if I can fix it.

Activity 35: Strengthening/Softening Adjectives in Writing
In some countries today, a fairly large percentage of the population uses bicycles for basic transportation. For example, in China, Bangladesh, and some parts of the Netherlands, people use bicycles for more than 40 percent of all trips. Other countries, like the U.S. and Canada, however, have significantly lower bicycle use—an embarrassingly low 1 percent. How do we explain these differences?

In countries like Canada and the U.S., people think of bicycles as transportation. As a result, their cities have been developed with an extremely large number of bicycle routes. Some streets are marked as “car-free zones,” and some traffic lights are timed for bicycles, not cars. These cities are considerably safer places to ride and have very low numbers of bicycle accidents.

In countries like Canada and the U.S., people have quite a different way of thinking about bicycles. People usually ride bicycles for exercise or fun—not transportation. Cities are not designed to accommodate bicyclists. These cities tend to be more spread out, and the long distances between places makes riding a bicycle impractical. Other common problems include a relatively small number of bicycle parking spaces and unfriendly treatment of bicyclists by car drivers.

In some developing countries, there is a completely different type of problem. In India, a bicycle has a substantially greater cost. In fact, a bicycle costs twice as much in India as in other developing countries like China and Brazil. This is unfortunate, since research in Uganda, Tanzania, and Sri Lanka shows that bicycle ownership can lead to a noticeably higher income—as much as 35 percent.

Think about It
They generally sound more formal.

Activity 36: Using Longer Noun Phrases
1. Physical fitness, the result of exercise, proper diet, and nutrition, can improve mental health and self-esteem.
2. Physical exercise, which can help with weight loss, should be frequent and intense.
3. Aerobics, which is a kind of exercise of relatively low intensity, increases oxygen available to the body.
4. Bicycling, a kind of low-intensity exercise for the whole body, is also the second most popular spectator sport in the world.
5. Anaerobic exercise refers to a high-intensity activity of short duration that promotes strength and speed.
6. Weight training, which is a kind of strength exercise, is popular with professional athletes.
7. Exercise releases endorphins, which are the body’s natural feel-good chemicals that can even temporarily relieve pain.
8. There is convincing evidence that exercise usually improves sleep for most people.

Think about It
appositive, dependent (adjective) clauses, complement

Activity 38: Identifying the Main Noun
1. After we’ve finished, we’ll have a few minutes to relax and take that much-needed coffee break.
2. The Thinker, one of the most significant works of art in the world, was created by Auguste Rodin in 1902.
3. The effects of music on the human body include both mental and physical benefits.
4. The speakers will discuss reasons for the dramatic increase in health-care costs.
5. A doctorate is the highest degree that a student can earn.
6. The salaries of community college graduates are higher than those of people with just a high school education.
7. Freshly picked raw green leaves are an excellent source of vitamin C.
8. Traditional African clothing depends on the natural resources of different areas and materials that people can produce cheaply.
9. After many thousands of years, African people began to make new kinds of clothes that were lighter and cooler.
10. India’s Internet population was 112 million in 2011, making it the third largest market in the world after China and the U.S.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Many of the noun phrases contained prepositional phrases. Sometimes it was hard to tell the difference between the object of a prepositional phrase and the subject of the noun phrase.

Activity 39: Using Noun Phrases to Connect Ideas
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. There are many possible ways to solve the problems in our schools. One possible solution is to increase funding for education.
2. Some hospitals use music as a pain management technique for their older patients. This management technique helps calm patients and often results in less pain.
3. Enrollment at universities has declined a great deal in the last five years. As a result of this decline in enrollment, tuition has increased.
4. We really need to change parts of our voting system in some major ways. While some of these major changes might be difficult to carry out, they would increase voter turnout.

5. The government has invested heavily in new energy sources recently. These investments in new energy sources have led to several important developments.

6. Many patients think their doctors don’t listen carefully to them. This feeling is more common among elderly patients.

7. Speaking and writing differ significantly in several ways. The most important of these differences is that speakers usually know who they are talking to, but writers do not.

8. Many scientists believe that gases in the air are causing earth temperatures to rise. The rise in temperatures is called global warming.

9. Young children begin to learn new words very quickly at about 18 to 24 months of age. Researchers have called this age the “vocabulary explosion.”

10. Home prices have been increasing rapidly in some parts of the country. Rapid price increases have made it more difficult to get a loan.

Activity 40: Connecting Sentences
In the Think about It activity, students will underline the idea introduced in the first sentence and circle the noun phrase in the second sentence that helps connect the ideas.

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. There are many advantages to having a cell phone. One of the most important benefits is that you can call for help in an emergency.

2. If young children are permitted to use cell phones, they need to have some rules. One rule might be that the phone can only be used to call family members.

3. Unfortunately, scientists have also found a number of problems with using cell phones for long periods of time. One possible problem is an increased risk of cancer.

4. Recently, more people have begun to educate their children at home. Home schooling can have both good and bad effects on a child. One positive effect is that students learn at their own pace.

5. Attending public schools can provide students with some advantages. One advantage is that students learn how to interact with many different types of people.

6. However, not all public schools provide good learning environments. An example of a poor learning environment is one where there are too many students in the classroom.

7. There are many benefits to experiencing life in a foreign country when you’re young. One major benefit is that young children can learn a language other than the one spoken at home.

8. In their early years, children are influenced by many aspects of the culture around them. One aspect of culture that may influence them is a different way of dressing.

9. At the same time, moving to a new country as a child can also be difficult. One difficulty is moving away from friends and possibly extended family.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
In addition to helping the reader connect ideas, repeating information helps to make the writing clear for the reader. These things help the reader follow the writer’s argument and make writing cohesive.

Wrap-Up

A Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

- a sandwich shop
- tasty food and low prices
- a medium-sized place
- delicious chicken salad sandwich
- homemade vegetable soup
- friendly atmosphere
- high-quality service

Peaches Grill is a medium-sized sandwich shop near my apartment. For very little money, you can get a delicious chicken salad sandwich on homemade bread or a large bowl of homemade vegetable soup. The friendly atmosphere at Peaches Grill, the tasty food, the high-quality service, and the low prices will make you want to return many times.

B Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

- business trip
- furniture store
- job fair

During a recent business trip, my plane was delayed. I need to go to the furniture store to buy a new bed. If Carlos is still looking for a job, he should go to the job fair next week.

C Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

This is a photograph of some of my friends. When I took this photo, they were playing an Italian game called bocce. In this game, one person throws a small ball toward the end of the playing area. The same person then throws a larger ball toward the small ball. The goal of the game is to get close to the small ball without touching it. The other players then try to throw balls even closer to the small ball. In this photograph, my friend Steven is about to take his turn. None of us could play very well, but we still had fun.

D Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

The Great Barrier Reef is a site of remarkable variety and beauty on the northeast coast of Australia. It contains the world’s largest collection of coral reefs, with 400 types of coral, 1,500 species of fish, and 4,000 types of mollusks. It also holds great scientific interest as the habitat of species such as the dugong (“sea cow”) and the large green turtle, which are threatened with extinction.
Warm-Up

A
1. Thomas Edison, who invented the light bulb, once said that he was afraid of the dark.
2. The active ingredient in most toothpaste is sodium fluoride, which can be lethal if swallowed.
3. Ireland, New Zealand, Greenland, and Iceland, which are all islands, have no native land snakes.
4. The man who invented the phonograph was almost deaf.
5. There are birds that can fly over 300 miles a day.
6. There is a plant that was grown in a lab from 2,000-year-old seeds.
7. Vincent Van Gogh's brother bought one of the only paintings Van Gogh sold during his life.

B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>True</th>
<th>False</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Adjective clauses always begin with who, which, or that.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Adjective clauses come before the nouns they describe.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Adjective clauses can describe both people and things.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Adjective clauses are always at the beginning of a sentence.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. We sometimes use commas before and after an adjective clause.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C
who won't read, who can't read

Activity 1: Noticing Adjective Clauses in Noun Phrases
Students will circle the main noun in each noun phrase as part of the Think about It activity.

It is hard to imagine a time before movies, but before the 1870s, motion pictures did not exist. Early photographers who first experimented with motion and photography, such as Eadweard Muybridge, used innovative cameras that could take as many as 24 pictures per second. These cameras were the first step toward movies, but there was still no easy way to show these images to an audience. It was two French brothers who finally accomplished this in 1895. Auguste and Louis Lumière invented a machine that they called a Cinématographe. This was a camera that could shoot, develop, and project film. Audiences of all sizes could gather around a screen and watch the brothers' short films, which showed people sneezing, boarding a train, or leaving work. Though these movies didn't tell a story, they were the beginning of the biggest art form of our time.

Think about It
The adjective clause should be close to the noun it describes so that the reader knows what noun the adjective clause is describing.

Activity 2: Identifying Adjective Clauses
Agree/Disagree answers will vary.
1. People who have more money are happier.
2. A student that cheats should be expelled from school.
3. Products that cost more money are usually better.
4. You should never trust a person who has lied to you before.
5. Friends are people who never let you down.
6. Most people want a job that will make them rich and famous.
7. The person that works the hardest has the most success.
8. You should never tell people things that might hurt their feelings.
9. Most people who succeed in life are smart, hard-working, and honest.
10. Any person who commits a crime should be punished.

Think about It
Middle:
who have more money
that cheats
that cost more money
that works the hardest
who succeed in life
who commits a crime

End:
who has lied to you before
who never let you down
which will make them rich and famous

Think about It

Noun + adjective clause with who:
people who have more money
person who has lied to you before
people who never let you down
person who succeed in life
person who commits a crime

Noun + adjective clause with that:
student who cheats
products that cost more money
person that works the hardest
things that might hurt their feelings

Noun + adjective clause with which:
job which will make them rich and famous

QUESTIONS
1. The clauses in sentences 1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 9, and 10.
2. The clauses in sentences 3, 6, and 8.
3. We use who or that to describe nouns that are people. We use that or which to describe nouns that are things.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
People who have more money are not always happier.
Products that cost more money are often better.
You should sometimes tell people things that might hurt their feelings.
Activity 3: Noticing Adjective Clauses That Describe People and Things
1. The man who repaired my guitar did a great job.
2. What was that dish that tasted like almonds?
3. The customers who came in before 5:00 got a discount.
4. My grandmother had a device that helped her breathe at night.
5. Did you ever talk to that woman who worked in the front office?
6. She never wore clothes that were out of style.
7. They served desserts that were just amazing.
8. They had one son that sang really well and another son that danced really well.
9. The woman who lived in that house was always really friendly.
10. I didn’t know the people that lived across the street.

Think about It
The adjective clauses in sentences 1, 3, 5, 8, 9, and 10 can use who or that because they describe people.

Activity 4: Using That or Who for People and Things
1. A: David is going to help out today.
   B: Is he the one that/who helped last week?
   A: No, that was James.
2. A: How was the restaurant?
   B: It was pretty fancy. There was a guy that/who met us at the door and took our coats.
3. A: You remember that woman that/who fell down the stairs?
   B: Yeah. That was terrible.
   A: Well, I saw her yesterday, and she’s doing fine now.
4. A: Where did you buy that T-shirt?
   B: At the new store on Cherry Street. You know, the one that opened last month.
   A: Yeah. I haven’t been there yet.
5. A: The woman that/who left her glasses here came back.
   B: Oh, I bet she was glad to find them.
6. A: What’s the name of that song that starts with a long guitar solo?
   B: Hmm. I know the song, but I don’t know what it’s called.
7. A: I want to live in a city that has free Wi-Fi everywhere.
   B: That would be nice.
8. A: Have you seen the student that/who sits next to the desk?
   B: No. I think she’s absent today.
9. A: Do you know the man that/who owns Java Café?
   B: Yeah. That’s my favorite coffee place. His name’s John.
10. A: Do you have one of those things that pulls staples out?
    B: Yeah, somewhere. Check the desk drawer.

Activity 5: Verb Forms in Adjective Clauses
1. The man who repairs my guitar does a great job.
2. What is that dish that tastes like almonds?
3. The customers who come in before 5:00 get a discount.
4. My grandmother has a device that helps her breathe at night.
5. Do you ever talk to that woman who works in the front office?
6. She never wears clothes that are out of style.
7. They serve desserts that are just amazing.
8. They have one son that sings really well and another son that dances really well.
9. The woman who lives in that house is always really friendly.
10. I don’t know the people that live across the street.

Activity 6: Describing People with Adjective Clauses
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I’d rather not have a boss who treats people unfairly.
I’d rather have a roommate who is relaxed and friendly.
I’d rather not have a teacher who lets people leave early.
I’d rather have friends who like to go out and have fun.
I’d rather not have friends who are lazy and unreliable.
I’d rather have neighbors who have a good sense of humor.
I’d rather have a boss who explains everything clearly.
I’d rather not have co-workers who talk a lot.
I’d rather have a teacher who corrects my work.
I’d rather have neighbors who are active.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I’d rather have co-workers who will stay late when we have a lot of work to do.
2. I’d rather not have a boss who doesn’t communicate effectively.
3. I’d rather not have neighbors who have a lot of loud parties.
4. I’d rather have a roommate who is neat and tidy.

Activity 7: Describing Things with Adjective Clauses
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I like neighborhoods that are quiet at night.
I like books that have interesting characters.
I don’t like movies that are scary or violent.
I like music that helps me relax.
I don’t like new technology that is hard to understand.
I like cities that have a lot of nightlife.
I like cities that have large green areas.
I like movies that make me laugh.
I’m interested in new technology that makes my life easier.
I’m interested in books that teach me about the world.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I like cities that have good public transportation.
2. I don’t like books that tell a story very slowly.
3. I’m interested in new technology that lets me talk to my friends in other countries.
4. I like music that is happy and cheerful.

Activity 8: Error Correction
1. We read several authors who/that talked about this issue.
2. There were a lot of students who/that missed class yesterday.
3. The employee who/that works the night shift didn’t show up last night.
4. Did you meet the professor who he visited the class last week?
5. I met a really interesting woman that designs furniture.
6. There’s a photograph that shows what he looked like 20 years ago.
7. The toy train that/who/which was really expensive.
8. Everybody loves the soccer player who/that made the winning goal.
9. Please put this where people who are interested can see it.
10. I have a good friend that goes to that school.

Activity 9: Adding Adjective Clauses
Students will identify the subject relative pronouns and object relative pronouns as part of the Think about It activity.
1. The Andromeda Galaxy is the most distant object that you can see without a telescope (O), 2.4 million light years away.
2. Mercury is the only metal that is liquid at room temperature (S).
3. The longest string of numbers that most people can remember easily (O) is seven.
4. Honey doesn’t spoil or go bad. A person could safely eat honey that is a thousand years old (S).
5. Your brain uses 20 percent of the oxygen that enters your bloodstream (S).
6. A person that doesn’t sleep (S) experiences problems more quickly than a person that doesn’t eat.
7. There are small, microscopic animals that live in most people's eyelashes (S).
8. There is a part of your brain that specializes in recognizing faces (S).
9. The width that you can stretch out your arms (O) is about the same as your height.
10. In 2007, researchers found a clam that had lived for over 400 years (S).
11. People who go into space (S) may get up to 3 percent taller while they are up there.

**Activity 10:** Noticing Subjects and Verbs in Adjective Clauses
Students will identify the subject relative pronouns and object relative pronouns as part of the Think about It activity.

1. A: Who's Isabel?
   B: She's the girl that I introduced you to last week (O).
2. A: Where's the teacher that we had yesterday (O)?
   B: She's sick. She's supposed to come back for the next class.
3. A: There's one thing that I don't understand (O) about this movie.
   B: What's that?
4. A: Why didn't the hero just call the police for help?
   B: Oh, I do! Sorry I forgot to pay you back.
5. A: Did they change the carpet?
   B: Yeah. The one that used to be here (S) was blue and white.
6. A: This is the best soup that I've ever tasted (O).
   B: Thanks. It's my mom's recipe.
7. A: I can't stand people who are always late (S).
   B: I know. It's really annoying.
8. A: What happened to the keys that were on this table (S)?
   B: I don't know. I didn't touch them.
9. A: This guy who knows (O) is starting his own T-shirt business.
   B: Sounds like a hard way to make money.
10. A: What's International Day?
    B: It's a big cultural event that we have here every year (O).
    It's fun.

**Activity 11:** Adding Relative Pronouns
1. Nowadays, it's hard to find a job that doesn't require some technical skill.
2. Employers want the people that they hire to have good communication skills.
3. Probably the most important personal quality that employers look for is honesty.
4. Employers are looking for workers who/that get along well with others.
5. Other skills that employers value are leadership, problem solving, and the ability to work independently.
6. The money that an employee earns is important, but it's not the only thing that matters.
7. Most employees want a job that gives them responsibility.
8. More and more employees want to work for companies that offer flexible hours.
9. Many employees want a boss who/that will give frequent feedback.
10. People like to work for companies that allow them to be creative.

**Activity 12:** Using Adjective Clauses
Students will identify the subject relative pronouns and object relative pronouns as part of the Think about It activity.

1. What do you remember about the first time that you came to this school (O)?
2. What is one thing that makes you really happy (S)?
3. Who is the first person you talk to every day (O)?
4. What is one thing that annoys you a lot (S)?
1. [Research] conducted in the Tule Valley of Mexico has identified a new method of filtering water—cilantro! Contaminated water causes a number of problems in the area, but the [methods] normally used to clean water are too expensive for local residents. So far, tests show that cilantro works well to reduce some of the contamination.

2. Most children under age 10 think that the earth is flat. [A survey] carried out for the U.S. National Science Teachers Association showed that most children are taught that the earth is round at about age 10. Before then, they rely on their own perceptions.

3. The use of a [drug] known to the ancient Egyptians has been suggested for the treatment of certain cancers. Dr. Richard L. Edelson, in a recent *Scientific American* article, describes how cancerous [cells] removed from a patient’s body are damaged by the drug, known as 8-MOP.

4. [Clams] collected from rivers can provide information about contamination in the water. A clam eats by pulling in water and absorbing food from it, so any toxins in the water will build up inside the clam’s body. By testing clams, biologists have discovered [chemicals] buried years ago that are now leaking into river water.

5. NASA’s *Cassini* spacecraft has detected a [chemical] used to make food containers, car bumpers, and other consumer products on Saturn’s moon Titan. This chemical is usually put together in long chains to form a [plastic] called polypropylene. This is the first time the chemical has been discovered on any moon or planet other than Earth.

Think about It

1. Research that was conducted in the Tule Valley of Mexico has identified a new method of filtering water—cilantro! (simple past passive) . . . the methods that are normally used to clean water are too expensive for local residents. (simple present passive)

2. A survey that was carried out for the U.S. National Science Teachers Association showed that most children are taught that the earth is round at about age 10. (simple past passive) The use of a drug that was known to the ancient Egyptians has been suggested for the treatment of certain cancers. (simple past passive)

3. Dr. Richard L. Edelson, in a recent *Scientific American* article, describes how cancerous cells that were removed from a patient’s body are damaged by the drug, known as 8-MOP. (simple past passive)

4. Clams that are collected from rivers can provide information about contamination in the water. (simple present passive) By testing clams, biologists have discovered chemicals that were buried years ago that are now leaking into river water. (simple past passive)

5. NASA’s *Cassini* spacecraft has detected a chemical that is used to make containers, car bumpers, and other consumer products on Saturn’s moon Titan. (simple present passive) This chemical is usually put together in long chains to form a plastic called polypropylene. (simple present passive)

Activity 16: Reducing Passive Forms

1. Dr. Antonia Novello was the first woman named surgeon general of the United States.

2. The first automating banking machines connected to computers were made in the 1970s.

3. Golf was one of the first sports cut from the modern Olympics.

4. Grover Cleveland was the first president married in the White House.

5. The first woman pictured on a U.S. stamp was Queen Isabella of Spain.

6. The first U.S. president inaugurated in Washington, D.C., was Thomas Jefferson.

7. Herbert Hoover was the first U.S. president born west of the Mississippi.

8. The first woman awarded a Nobel Prize was Marie Curie.

9. The first living thing sent into space was a dog.

10. The first computers designed as laptops went on sale in 1982.

Activity 17: Identifying Adjective Clause Forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Reduced</th>
<th>Not reduced</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>☑️</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>☑️</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>☑️</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>☑️</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>☑️</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>☐</td>
<td>☑️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>☑️</td>
<td>☐</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Think about It

3. The adjective clause can’t be reduced because the relative pronoun is not the subject.

6. Growers quickly discovered that flowers kept cold for the entire journey can stay fresh for days.

9. In addition, growers now have to think about customers concerned about the sustainability of the flowers they buy. *The second adjective clause can’t be reduced because the relative pronoun is not the subject.*
Activity 18: Using Reduced Adjective Clauses
1. The number of people who use smartphones has increased dramatically.
2. There are more laws that require companies to explain their privacy policies.
3. These days there are more students who have trouble paying for college.
4. Nowadays, products that contain dangerous substances must carry warning labels.
5. The cars that we buy these days are safer than cars from ten years ago.
6. In recent years, accidents that involve pedestrians have been on the rise.
7. People who are looking for environmentally friendly products have a lot more choices now.
8. There are more and more jobs that require advanced training.
9. Many surgeries are now performed by doctors that use advanced technology.
10. There are now universities that award degrees to students who take all of their classes online.
11. Most places have laws that concern cell phones and driving.
12. Nowadays, most of the news that people read is online.
13. There are more companies that are offering flexible time schedules and work-at-home options.

Think about It
1. The adjective clauses in sentences 5 and 12 cannot be reduced because the relative pronoun is not the subject.
2. Only sentences 7 and 13 have a continuous verb in the full adjective clause.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. There are more laws requiring companies to label ingredients in our food.
2. There are more companies selling high-tech products.
3. There are more people living in cities instead of in the country.
4. We saw a large seal lying on the beach.
5. The doctor uses methods that are based on his experience in combat.
6. We buy a lot of products that are made in China.
7. They asked him a lot of questions concerning his time overseas.
8. We spoke to several people who were given promotions.
9. That book written by Michael Pollan is very interesting.
10. People looking for a new place to eat dinner should try Millie's Restaurant.

Activity 19: Error Correction
1. We saw a large seal was lying on the beach.
2. The doctor uses methods that are based on his experience in combat.
3. We buy a lot of products that are made in China.
4. They asked him a lot of questions concerning his time overseas.
5. The woman working at the front desk was friendly.
6. I don’t want to live in a house that was built before 1950.
7. The guy who I was talking to last night was really smart.
8. We spoke to several people who were given promotions.
9. That book written by Michael Pollan is very interesting.
10. People looking for a new place to eat dinner should try Millie's Restaurant.

Activity 20: Using Defining Adjective Clauses
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. A friend is someone who talks to you when you’re sad.
2. A happy person is a person who sees the best in everything.
3. Your family are the people who love you no matter what.
4. An interesting book is one that I’ll read many times.
5. A great city is one that has lots of interesting things to do.
6. The best TV shows are the ones that make me laugh.
7. It’s important to have someone who listens to you.
8. I would like to have a machine that would clean my apartment.
9. I would like to visit a place that I’ve never been to before.
10. I like music that reminds me of my friends.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Subject: 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10
Object: 4, 9

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I like photos that remind me of fun vacations with my family.
2. I would like to have a car that can drive itself.
3. I’m important to have a job that you enjoy doing.
4. A friend is someone who helps you when you need it.

Activity 21: Noticing Defining and Non-defining Adjective Clauses
Tori Murden McClure began the adventure of a lifetime when she attempted to be the first woman to row across the Atlantic Ocean. McClure, who had already skied across Antarctica and climbed mountains, was no stranger to adventure. In June 1998, she departed from the east coast of the U.S. in a 23-foot wooden boat with no motor and no sail. She had many problems, including the loss of her communication equipment, fatigue, and loneliness. But the worst thing she encountered in her three months at sea was a powerful hurricane that destroyed her boat and almost killed her. She was rescued and taken back home. She felt like a failure.

After her failed attempt to cross the Atlantic in a rowboat, McClure got a job with the famous boxer Muhammad Ali, who encouraged her to try again. Ali told her he didn’t get to be “world champ” three times until he’d gotten knocked down twice. So McClure tried again in 1999. She rowed for 81 days and this time she made it across the Atlantic.

McClure, who is now a college president, describes herself as a “seeker of truth” more than an adventurer. She says, “I wanted to row across the ocean because I knew I would learn something that I did not know.” She wrote a book that describes her journey called A Pearl in the Storm: How I Found My Heart in the Middle of the Ocean. She is an inspiration to many.
Activity 23: Using Non-defining Adjective Clauses

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. The Great Fire of London of 1666, which destroyed about 13,000 houses, only killed eight people.
2. The Minoan civilization, which suddenly disappeared in 1600 BCE, may have been destroyed by an earthquake.
3. Amelia Earhart, who was the first female pilot to fly solo across the Atlantic Ocean, disappeared in 1937.
4. Christiaan Barnard performed the first human heart transplant, which was a major medical accomplishment, in 1967.
5. The Taj Mahal, which was completed in 1648, is one of the most beautiful buildings in the world.
6. Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin, which became the first widely used antibiotic.
7. Antarctica, which is almost completely covered with ice, was not discovered until the 1800s.
8. The Polynesian Islands, which are spread over 70.1 million miles of ocean, have been populated for thousands of years.
9. Oranges, which probably originated in Southeast Asia, were being grown in China as far back as 2500 BCE.
10. Coffee, which was discovered in Ethiopia, was a popular drink in many countries by 1100.

Think about It
Subject: 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10
Object: 4, 6

Write about It
1. The Great Fire of London of 1666, which only killed eight people, destroyed about 13,000 houses.
2. The Minoan civilization, which may have been destroyed by an earthquake, suddenly disappeared in 1600 BCE.
3. Amelia Earhart, who disappeared in 1937, was the first female pilot to fly solo across the Atlantic Ocean.
4. The Taj Mahal, which is one of the most beautiful buildings in the world, was completed in 1648.
5. Antarctica, which was not discovered until the 1800s, is almost completely covered with ice.
6. The Polynesian Islands, which have been populated for thousands of years, are spread over 70.1 million miles of ocean.
7. Oranges, which were being grown in China as far back as 2500 BCE, probably originated in Southeast Asia.
8. Coffee, which was a popular drink in many countries by 1100, was discovered in Ethiopia.

QUESTIONS
Answers on whether one version of the rewritten sentences sounds better than the other will vary.
There is no alternative version for sentences 4 and 6 because the information in the adjective clause describes the object, so it can't be exchanged with information in the main clause that describes the subject.

Activity 24: Using Defining and Non-defining Adjective Clauses
1. The children, who couldn't swim, stayed out of the water.
2. The children who couldn't swim stayed out of the water.
3. Mary took a book that was on the table.
4. I finally read Coleman's book, which was very interesting.
5. My sister, who has never liked the water, just learned how to scuba-dive.
6. Kate's sister who lives in Washington is getting married.
7. Sam's plan is to fix up the house, which is in a lovely neighborhood near downtown.
8. Carlos needs to sell the house that he inherited from his grandfather.
9. Emma was walking with a friend who I've met several times.
10. Toshi was playing soccer with his friends, who were much better at the game than he was.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
In sentences 2, 3, 6, 8, and 9, the adjective clause makes the meaning of the sentence complete, so they are defining adjective clauses.
The adjective clauses in sentences 1, 4, 5, 7, and 10 include additional information that's not necessary to make the meaning of the sentence complete, so they are non-defining adjective clauses.

Activity 25: Combining Sentences with Whose
1. I recently met a woman whose daughter was a professional violinist.
2. The professor was talking to a student whose name I don't know.
3. Do you know a woman whose first name begins with Z?
4. They gave the award to Hassan, whose work has been excellent this year.
5. How do I contact someone whose email I don't know?
6. The police were talking to a woman whose purse was stolen in the park.
7. The police are looking for a man whose car was left by the side of the road.
8. Most people want to have talented co-workers whose skills are at the same level.
9. The sailor whose boat sank last weekend is recovering in the hospital.
10. I have a great friend whose taste in music is exactly the same as mine.

Activity 26: Noticing Whose
1. The early astronauts were test pilots. These were men whose lives were full of excitement and danger.
2. Today's space programs select astronauts whose skills include working well with others.
3. The International Space Station, whose first component was sent to space in 1988, has been continuously occupied since 2000.
4. Sixteen countries take part in the space station program, whose main goal is scientific experimentation.
5. Several tourists have visited the International Space Station. These private citizens, whose flights cost millions of dollars, have spent as long as two weeks in space.
6. Space station astronauts, whose bones get weak in space without exercise, must work out for at least two hours every day.
7. It's amazing to see astronauts whose spacesuits weigh about 280 pounds floating around in space.
8. NASA has six active missions focused on the planet Mars, whose red color has fascinated humans for hundreds of years. Its red color has fascinated humans for hundreds of years.
9. The first "space tourist" was Charles D. Walker, whose private flight on the space shuttle cost $40,000.
10. His private flight on the space shuttle cost $40,000.
10. You would weigh much less on a planet whose gravitational pull is not as strong as the earth’s. Its gravitational pull is not as strong as the earth’s.

Think about It
Non-defining: 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9

Think about It
People: 1, 2, 5, 6, 9
Things: 3, 8, 10
Organization: 4

Activity 27: Noticing Adjective Clauses with Prepositions
1. He’s the best boss I’ve ever worked for.
2. She’s the person I spoke to the most often when I first moved here.
3. The house that I grew up in was knocked down a few years ago.
4. I went shopping yesterday, but the shoes I was looking for weren’t on sale anymore.
5. Having a job that I believed in made me happier.
6. My brother is one of those people you can always rely on.
7. I think I saw a man take something he didn’t pay for.
8. Last night I went to the same restaurant that I go to every Wednesday.
9. I would never show up at an event I wasn’t invited to.
10. My home is one of the many things I am grateful for.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
- It’s the best company I’ve ever worked for.
- The town that I grew up in is about 50 miles from here.
- The librarian said someone already checked out the book I was looking for.
- My brother found something in his shopping bag he didn’t pay for.
- I went shopping yesterday, but the shoes I was looking for weren’t on sale anymore.
- Having a job that I believed in made me happier.
- My brother is one of those people you can always rely on.
- I think I saw a man take something he didn’t pay for.
- Last night I went to the same restaurant that I go to every Wednesday.
- I would never show up at an event I wasn’t invited to.
- My home is one of the many things I am grateful for.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
- She’s the person to whom I spoke the most often when I first moved here.
- Having a job in which I believed made me happier.
- My brother is one of those people you can always rely on.
- I would never show up at an event I wasn’t invited to.
- My home is one of the many things I am grateful for.

Activity 28: Using Adjective Clauses with That + Preposition
1. A: Is that the car you came in?
   B: Yeah, it is. It’s my brother’s.
2. A: We’ll be discussing solar energy.
   B: Oh, good. That’s something I’m interested in.
3. A: Why is James so happy?
   B: He finally got that computer he’s been saving up for.
4. A: What did you get your brother for his birthday?
   B: Oh, no. I knew there was something I had forgotten about.
5. A: What’s the name of that song you were listening to yesterday?
   B: I’m not sure. It was on the radio.
   B: Yeah. I just took a test that I wasn’t prepared for.
7. A: Who’s that guy John was shouting at?
   B: His name is Matt. I don’t know why John is so mad at him.
   B: Yeah. A project that I contributed to is being graded today.
9. A: I don’t think I did very well on that quiz.
   B: The quiz isn’t important. It’s next week’s test you should be worried about!
10. A: Look! There’s the hotel that we stayed in last time.
    B: Really? I don’t think so.

Think about It
No relative pronoun: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 9
You could use that. For 7, you could also use who.

Activity 29: Using Adjective Clauses with Preposition + Which or Whom
1. You’ll find Deep Waters very different from the book on which it is based. The hero is much like the character in the book, but the setting in which he works has been changed to modern-day New York.
2. Maple Town is a heart-warming show with a number of delightful characters to whom you’ll get very attached by the end of the season. Thursday’s episode, in which Sam is reunited with his long-lost brother, is particularly moving.
3. This silly show features a competition in which contestants win big prizes for cooking and eating strange foods. Fortunately, the producers have done a great job choosing people who are fun to watch. Last spring they received over a thousand video applications, from which they chose the funniest and most creative. As a result, the show is surprisingly entertaining.
4. Monday night we finally see the return of the show for which we’ve been waiting all summer. Dr. Soto is back, curing patients and solving mysteries. Last season ended with the doctor’s mysterious phone call. Monday we learn the identity of the strange woman to/with whom she was speaking.

Activity 30: Using Quantity Words with Which and Whom
1. Yosemite Valley gets about 4 million visitors a year, most of whom come from the U.S.
2. It has 1,504 campsites, a few of which are reserved for large groups.
3. It has 10 waterfalls, some of which are visible from the valley floor.
4. In Teotihuacan, you can visit Mayan pyramids, one of which is 210 feet tall.
5. You can see the ruins of ancient stone temples, all of which were originally painted bright colors.
6. Walk along the Avenue of the Dead, about half of which is recognizable now.
7. Over 100,000 people lived in the ancient city, some of whom were potters, jewelers, and craftsmen.
8. There are three enormous pits containing over 8,000 terracotta soldiers and other figures, only a few of which have been dug up.
9. The soldiers, most of which carry real weapons, are life-sized.
10. Special viewings of the soldiers have been granted to a few important visitors, one of whom was Queen Elizabeth.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
- In London you can ride the famous red buses, some of which have two levels.
- The island of Hawaii has several active volcanoes, one of which is erupting.

Activity 31: Error Correction
1. The student that I talked to on the first day of class was very nice.
2. The study included 45 participants, many of whom had just graduated from high school.
3. All students need to return the equipment to the department from which they borrowed it.
4. He tends to get very angry at people with whom he disagrees.
5. We were never given a receipt for the item we paid for.
6. They watched five movies, most of which she had seen before.
7. We still have the pen with which the president signed the document. (no errors)
8. The room in which the children sleep is down the hall to the left.
9. There were several authorities to whom he had to report the incident.
10. We have 135 residents here, many of whom are over 70 years old.

Activity 32: Referring to an Earlier Idea
1. A: Rob just bought a boat, which is pretty surprising.  
   B: I know! He’s always saying he doesn’t have any money.
2. A: They said the gift will arrive tomorrow, which is possible.
   B: But you just ordered it!
3. A: I spent the whole day working in the garden, which was really relaxing.
   B: Ha! That doesn’t sound very relaxing to me.
4. A: Sam’s out sick again, which means that I have to do all of his work.
   B: Oh, that’s too bad.
5. A: We’re supposed to bring the textbook on the first day of class, which I can’t do because mine hasn’t arrived yet.
   B: Really? Mine came two weeks ago.
6. A: They want us to be there at 5:00, which is too early for me.
   B: That’s right. You work ‘til 4:30, don’t you?
7. A: They want us to finish the presentation by Friday.
   B: Which doesn’t give us much time.
8. A: Which doesn’t sound like him at all.
   B: Which really shouldn’t surprise you. I think he’s kind of a slob.
9. A: It says here that he only attended school for two years.
   B: Which is hard to believe.
10. A: Which is what I told you would happen if you bought the cheap one.

Activity 33: Noticing Adjective Clauses as Responses
1. A: She said she’d be here at 6.
   B: Which isn’t very likely.
2. A: I heard they promoted Lonnie to manager.
   B: Which is the smartest thing they’ve ever done.
3. A: This coffee is terrible.
   B: Which is why I always order tea at this place!
4. A: Jake said that he can’t help us with the project.
   B: Which probably means that he doesn’t want to help.
5. A: We have to finish the presentation by Friday.
   B: Which doesn’t give us much time.
6. A: Alan never showed up yesterday.
   B: Which doesn’t sound like him at all.
7. A: Emma left all of her dirty dishes in the sink.
   B: Which really shouldn’t surprise you.
8. A: It says here that he only attended school for two years.
   B: Which is hard to believe.
   B: Which is what I told you would happen if you bought the cheap one.

Activity 34: Identifying Adjective Clauses
1. Tlacoyo, a Mexican treat made with corn flour and stuffed with beans, potatoes, or mushrooms, is an ancient food. The first Spaniards who came to Mexico wrote about buying tlacoyos from vendors selling them on the street. But the tlacoyos sold back then were healthier than the ones that are popular now because pre-Hispanic street vendors didn’t grill them in oil.
2. Jiaozi is the Chinese name for dumplings, which are eaten throughout the year but are particularly important for holidays in northern China. Dumplings, consisting of dough filled with meat or vegetables, are usually boiled and can be served hot or cold.
3. Baklava is a dessert from the Middle East. It is prepared by spreading out layers of pastry dough separated with melted butter in a large pan and covering them with chopped nuts. After the pastry is baked, a syrup containing honey or rose water is poured over the pastry. At one time, baklava was a food that people ate only on special occasions, but nowadays it is a popular dessert eaten year-round.

QUESTIONS
1. Reduced:
   a. A Mexican treat made with corn flour and stuffed with beans, potatoes, or mushrooms
   b. Made with corn flour and stuffed with beans, potatoes, or mushrooms
   c. Selling them on the street
   d. Boiled
   e. Eating them
   f. Grilling them
   g. Serving them

2. Tlacoyo, a Mexican treat made with corn flour and stuffed with beans, potatoes, or mushrooms, is an ancient food. The first Spaniards who came to Mexico wrote about buying tlacoyos from vendors selling them on the street. But the tlacoyos sold back then were healthier than the ones that are popular now because pre-Hispanic street vendors didn’t grill them in oil. Dumplings, consisting of dough filled with meat or vegetables, are usually boiled and can be served hot or cold. At one time, baklava was a food that people ate only on special occasions, but nowadays it is a popular dessert eaten year-round.
3. **Subject adjective clauses:**
a Mexican treat made with corn flour and stuffed with beans, potatoes, or mushrooms
made with corn flour and stuffed with beans, potatoes, or mushrooms
who came to Mexico
selling them on the street
sold back then
that are popular now
which are eaten throughout the year but are particularly important for holidays in northern China
consisting of dough filled with meat or vegetables
filled with meat or vegetables
separated with melted butter
containing honey or rose water
eaten year-round

**Object adjective clauses:**
that people ate only on special occasions
4. **Defining:**
made with corn flour and stuffed with beans, potatoes, or mushrooms
who came to Mexico
selling them on the street
sold back then
that are popular now
filled with meat or vegetables
separated with melted butter
containing honey or rose water
that people ate only on special occasions
eaten year-round

**Non-defining:**
a Mexican treat made with corn flour and stuffed with beans, potatoes, or mushrooms
which are eaten throughout the year but are particularly important for holidays in northern China
consisting of dough filled with meat or vegetables
5. that people ate only on special occasions → people ate only on special occasions (less formal)

**Activity 35:** Using a More Formal Style
1. The first people who tried to climb Mount Everest weren’t able to reach the top.
2. There were strong winds which forced the first climbers back down the mountain.
3. Later climbers had oxygen that they used to survive in the thin air.
4. In May of 1953, Tom Bourdillon and Charles Evans almost made it to the top. They described the route to the team members who would come after them the next day, Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay.
5. Hillary and Norgay, for whom the information was very useful, became the first climbers to reach the top of Everest.
6. Nowadays, reaching the top of Everest is an achievement to which many mountain climbers aspire.
7. Falling ice, strong winds, and freezing temperatures are dangers on Mount Everest. But the biggest danger that climbers face is the lack of oxygen.
8. Climbers who get injured are in serious trouble because they usually cannot be rescued.
9. There are many climbers who have set records on Everest, including the oldest and the youngest to reach the top (80 years old and 13 years old).
10. The Sherpas who climbers pay to carry their equipment up the mountain have a dangerous job.

**Activity 36:** Identifying Adjective Clauses
San Francisco is a coastal city **surrounded by water on three sides.** It is famous for its many hills, from which you can see San Francisco Bay and the Pacific Ocean. Alcatraz Island, **sitting in the middle of the bay,** used to be a prison but is now a popular tourist destination. The famous Golden Gate Bridge **spans the bay at its narrowest point.** Everyone has seen pictures of the bridge, **which is easily recognized by its orange color and elegant structure.**

**Think about It**
**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:
The second paragraph sounds better because it doesn’t use just short sentences but a mix of longer and shorter sentences.

**Activity 37:** Connecting Ideas
**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:
1. Sebastopol is a small town located in Northern California. The town has two main streets. They are lined with small shops, most of which are small and locally owned. The town is a one-hour drive from San Francisco. It is home to many commuters, who are willing to drive a long distance for the pleasure of living in a small town.
2. Visalia is a mid-sized town in Central California rarely visited by tourists. It is a few miles off of the main highway that leads to Fresno and the mountains of the Sierra Nevada. Visalia is surrounded by farmland which is home to many farm laborers. The town is quiet and residential. There is a pleasant downtown, which has a busy farmers’ market on the weekends.

**Write about It**
**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:
Sedona is a small town in Arizona that is very popular with tourists. The town is a two-hour drive from Phoenix. The town is famous for its red rocks, which get their color from iron in the sandstone. The Chapel of the Holy Cross, built into the rock, is one of the town’s well-known landmarks.

**Wrap-Up**

**A**
**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:
1. This is a famous person who has a late-night television show.
2. This is a TV show in which patients are treated at a hospital’s emergency room.
3. This is a date on which we celebrate the anniversary of U.S. independence from Great Britain.
4. This is a place that we studied in Tuesday’s English lesson.
5. This is a building that people want to see when they visit Barcelona.
6. This is a writer who writes mysteries about a Belgian detective.
7. This is an athlete who is the most famous soccer player in the world.
8. This is a person to whom most people bow.
9. This is a person whose English notebook is blue.
10. This is a food that people believe can improve your eyesight.

**B**
**Answers will vary.** Possible survey questions include:
1. Tell me about one time you made people laugh.
2. Name one person who you look up to.
3. What is something you like to do on weekends?
4. Have you ever done anything that really scared you?
5. Name one book that you would recommend to anyone.
6. What is one place that you would really like to visit?
7. Name one animal that you would find in a zoo.
8. What is one food that you can eat raw?
9. What is one way to peel an apple?
10. What is one reason to sleep late?

C

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Alexander the Great founded 20 cities that bore his name, most notably Alexandria in Egypt. Alexander’s settlement of Greece resulted in a new Hellenistic civilization, which was still evident in the traditions of the Byzantine Empire in the mid-fifteenth century. Alexander became legendary as a classical hero, and he features prominently in the history and myth of Greek and non-Greek cultures. He became the measure against which military leaders compared themselves, and military academies throughout the world still teach his tactics.
Unit 11

Warm-Up

A
1. The point of good writing is knowing when to stop. d
2. To teach is to learn twice over. b
3. The only thing better than singing is more singing. g
4. It's better to be alone than in bad company. a
5. Reading is to the mind what exercise is to the body. c
6. To sing well and to dance well is to be well educated. f
7. The essential ingredient in politics is timing. e

B
True False
1. Gerunds include an -ing form of a verb. ✓
2. We always use a gerund before a verb. ✓
3. A to-infinitive includes to + the base form of a verb. ✓
4. We can use a gerund or a to-infinitive as the subject of a sentence. ✓
5. We use both gerunds and to-infinitives in different ways in a sentence. ✓

C
Gerunds: learning, writing, reading
To-infinitives: to write, to read

Activity 1: Noticing -ing Forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Main verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Swimming is good exercise.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Golf is not an especially exhausting sport.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Setting a specific goal can help you stay with an exercise program.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Playing on a sports team can build self-esteem.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. You burn about 8.5 calories a minute when you are running.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Before they compete, most successful athletes try to avoid any distracting thoughts.</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. You should stretch frequently to keep your muscles from getting tight.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Stretching before you exercise won't necessarily prevent sore muscles.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Walking may be the perfect exercise. It's safe and simple and it doesn't require practice.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. If you dress properly, you can exercise even in the pouring rain. ✓✓
11. Many children today start specializing in one sport at an early age. This can lead to injuries. ✓✓
12. Most athletes regularly do exercises for building strength. ✓✓

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Playing soccer is good exercise.
2. Golf is not an especially tiring sport.
3. Planning a daily routine can help you stay with an exercise program.
4. Public speaking can build self-esteem.

Activity 2: Identifying Gerunds

In most situations, honesty is very important. Having good relationships with people is impossible when there is no trust. Your friends and colleagues won't trust you if they think you are capable of lying. However, lying in certain situations may actually be good for a friendship. For example, a friend may have cooked a nice dinner for you, but the food doesn't taste very good. In this case, saying the food is delicious causes less harm than telling the truth does. And if you don't like a friend's new haircut, it's better to avoid telling the truth. That would only hurt your friend's feelings. In my opinion, telling small lies in order to make other people feel good is OK, but the telling of lies for personal gain is never appropriate.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
One-word gerund: lying
Gerund with an object: having good relationships with people
Gerund that begins with a determiner: the telling of lies for personal gain
Gerund with an expression of time or place: lying in certain situations

Activity 3: Using Gerunds as Subjects

1. Voting is an important responsibility of all citizens.
2. Getting a first job is usually one of the most important events in a person's life.
3. Doing something you love is the key to success in life.
4. Feeling a lot of stress is bad for your health.
5. Exercising regularly has several benefits.
6. Having a good boss can make a job better.
7. Raising children requires patience and understanding.
8. Living in different countries helps you learn about other cultures.
9. Lying is usually unacceptable behavior.
10. Being a parent is one of the most important jobs a person has.
11. Learning a new language is a good way to exercise the brain.
12. Cooking for yourself doesn't have to be boring.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Paying taxes is an important responsibility of all citizens.
2. Getting married is usually one of the most important events in a person's life.
3. Having a job you enjoy is the key to success in life.
4. Eating a lot of junk food is bad for your health.
5. Eating fresh fruits and vegetables has several benefits.
6. Having talented co-workers can make a job better.
7. Being a teacher requires patience and understanding.
8. Hosting an exchange student helps you learn about other cultures.
9. Stealing is usually unacceptable behavior.
10. Raising children is one of the most important jobs a person has.
11. Doing crossword puzzles is a good way to exercise the brain.
12. Exercising doesn't have to be boring.

Activity 4: Using Not + Gerund
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. a. Going too fast can cause a car accident.
   b. Not paying attention to the road can cause a car accident.
   c. Talking on the phone while driving can cause a car accident.
   d. Not obeying the speed limit can cause a car accident.
2. a. Students' not participating in class drives some teachers crazy.
   b. Not coming to class on time drives some teachers crazy.
   c. Not listening in class drives some teachers crazy.
   d. Not doing your homework drives some teachers crazy.
3. a. Exercising can help you stay healthy.
   b. Not eating a lot of sweets can help you stay healthy.
   c. Not smoking can help you stay healthy.
   d. Not eating a lot of junk food can help you stay healthy.

Activity 5: Be + Gerund or Be + Main Verb?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Be + Gerund</th>
<th>Be + Main Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. My computer was working when I left home.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. My last job was working with computers.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I don’t know anyone who is working there.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Nothing is working.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. My favorite way to spend time is working on old cars.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. My dream is having a car of my own.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. One common symptom of the flu is having a fever.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Seek help if your child is having trouble with homework assignments.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. The hard drive on my laptop is having problems.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity 6: Using Be + Gerund
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. The key to a successful marriage is communicating with your husband or wife.
2. One common cause of arguments is not listening to your husband or wife.
3. The most difficult thing about marriage is not having enough personal space.
4. The easiest thing about marriage is being able to rely on your husband or wife.
5. The most rewarding thing about marriage is sharing a life together.
6. The key to cooking a great meal is following the recipe.
7. One common cause of bad food is not understanding how foods mix.
8. The most difficult thing about cooking a great meal is getting the timing correct.
9. The easiest thing about cooking a great meal is finding fresh ingredients.
10. The most rewarding thing about cooking a great meal is sharing it with others.

Activity 7: Distinguishing Subjects and Subject Completers
A third of workers would quit a job because of the irritating behavior of their co-workers, according to a new survey.
Examples of annoying behavior were listening to voicemails on speakerphone, swearing at computers, and receiving emails from someone who sits nearby. Of the 2,318 people surveyed, 32 percent said that talking loudly was the most annoying behavior.
Twenty-two percent said that talking on a speakerphone was the No. 1 pet peeve. Other irritating behaviors were not cleaning up after yourself, bringing strong-smelling food for lunch, and taking things without permission.

Think about It
Irritating, according to, and annoying are used as adjectives.

Write about It
Answers will vary.
Activity 8: Error Correction
1. Coming to this country was a dream come true.
2. I don't think that getting a lot of money is a good goal.
3. Attending a university helps people to get a better job.
4. My father was visiting me when I got sick. (no errors)
5. The worst thing about it was looking for a place to live.
6. I think that studying was an important part of the job.
7. Carrying on a conversation in English is really hard for me. (no errors)
8. My favorite thing is meeting my friends after class.
9. Going to school together is good for girls and boys.

Activity 9: Using Verbs + Gerunds
1. An extrovert is someone who enjoys being around other people.
2. An introvert is someone who dislikes spending too much time with other people.
3. A couch potato is someone who enjoys sitting on the couch all day.
4. A workaholic is someone who can't stop working.
5. A homebody is someone who prefers spending time at home.
6. A spendthrift is someone who loves spending money.
7. A procrastinator is someone who postpones doing what he or she needs to do.
8. A health nut is someone who hates eating unhealthy food.
9. A globetrotter is someone who enjoys traveling around the world.
10. A control freak is someone who can't stand not being in charge.
11. A slob is someone who doesn't mind living in a messy house.
12. A blabbermouth is someone who can't resist telling a secret.
13. A worrywart is someone who can't stop worrying.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I'm an extrovert because I enjoy being around other people. I'm also a worrywart because I'm always worrying about my job.

Activity 10: Using Verbs + Gerunds
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I enjoyed drawing pictures and eating ice cream.
2. I disliked following instructions and doing my homework.
3. I hated doing dishes and cleaning my room.
4. I regret being mean to my brother and not cleaning my room.
5. I regret not studying harder and not playing sports.
6. I practiced playing the piano and singing.

Activity 11: Using Prepositions + Gerunds
1. In many countries, people greet each other by shaking hands.
2. In some cultures, people kiss on the cheeks instead of shaking hands.
3. In some countries, people shake hands by taking your hand in both of their hands.
4. Americans sometimes greet people at a distance by waving.
5. In some cultures, strangers welcome each other by hugging and then rubbing each other's back.
6. It's rude to walk past a friend without saying hello.
7. In France, people often kiss each other on both cheeks upon meeting and leaving.
8. People don't usually leave without saying goodbye.

Activity 13: Using a Verb + Preposition + Gerund
1. David apologized for being late.
2. Amanda worries about getting to school on time.
4. Anna is looking forward to going to New York.
5. Ava feels like staying home.
6. Kate complained about being too hot.
7. John insisted on going with Nick.
8. Matt put off visiting his uncle.
9. Rob succeeded in getting the job.
10. Carlos is thinking about going home.
11. Mary gave up on trying to finish the report tonight.
12. Toshi ended up missing a doctor's appointment.
13. Sam keeps on making the same mistake.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I never feel like getting up in the morning. Tom is looking forward to his summer vacation. Daisuke ended up getting a new job. Sarah forgot about her English test. Lara apologized for forgetting my birthday. Marla succeeded in finishing her homework.

Activity 14: Using an Adjective or a Noun + Preposition + Gerund
1. I'm pretty good at remaining calm.
2. There is nothing more important in making movies than the screenplay.
3. A champion is afraid of losing. Everyone else is afraid of winning.
4. The individual person is responsible for living his own life and for "finding himself."
5. I'm more interested in enjoying my life and looking after my family than being hugely successful.
6. I never get tired of hearing compliments.
7. Science is a way of thinking much more than it is a body of knowledge.
8. Without the faintest possibility of finding a job, I decided to devote myself to literature.
9. Children born today have a 50–50 chance of living to 100.
10. I toyed with the idea of pursuing a career as a lawyer just because I like to argue.

Activity 15: Using Gerunds as Objects
Jonas Salk is among the most admired medical scientists of the twentieth century. He initially planned on becoming a lawyer, but he became interested in studying biology and chemistry and ended up attending New York University medical school. There, in 1938, he began working with the scientist Thomas Francis, Jr., who was looking for a flu vaccine. Together, they developed a flu vaccine for the army to use during World War II.

In 1947, Salk became the head of the Virus Research Lab at the University of Pittsburgh. He felt the flu vaccine could be better, so he concentrated on improving it. He also began to study the poliovirus with hopes of creating a vaccine against polio as well. With help from the research of many other scientists, Salk succeeded in developing a polio vaccine. In 1952, he vaccinated his first volunteers, including himself, his wife, and their three sons. No one became ill, and in that same year, thousands of children started receiving the polio vaccine.

Activity 16: Error Correction
1. Advertising is everywhere. Wherever we go for news or entertainment, we see advertisements. These ads make us think we need things that we don't really need. I used to pay attention to ads, and sometimes I would even consider to
Buying the product. Eventually I got tired of seeing so many ads, and I stopped watching television and listening to the radio. Now I think there should be a law against showing ads in public places.

2. Anger is an appropriate response in certain situations. Being treated unfairly, for example, is a good reason for feeling anger. Examining why you are angry and then taking appropriate action is a good way to get a positive result from becoming angry or upset. In fact, suppressing anger can be harmful to your health.

3. Doing what you love is the key to success. No matter how hard you work, your success depends on doing what you love. When you love your job, you are totally committed to doing your best. You won't mind working extra hard when something difficult gets in your way.

Activity 17: Using Passive Gerunds
1. I hate being told what to do.
2. I don’t like being laughed at.
3. I love being invited to dinner.
4. I don’t like being ignored.
5. I’m tired of being made to feel guilty.
6. I don’t like being misunderstood.
7. I don’t appreciate being called too early.
8. I don’t appreciate being asked to drive all the time.
9. When I was a child, I liked being told I was a good athlete.
10. When I was a teenager, I hated not being allowed to go out in the evening.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include: I like being asked to play on a sports team. I don’t like being asked to clean up all the time.

Activity 18: Identifying Passive Gerunds
1. a. She is being treated like a child.
   ✔ b. Most people don’t like being treated like a child.
2. a. Stop throwing things at me. I don’t like being used as target practice.
   ✔ b. Most people hope that their tax dollars are being used wisely.
3. a. He’s afraid of being hurt again.
   ✔ b. Why did they stop the game? Nobody was being hurt.
4. a. Am I being punished for something?
   ✔ b. My being punished for this isn’t fair.
5. a. I don’t like being called ridiculous.
   ✔ b. She is being ridiculous.
6. a. I apologized for being mean.
   ✔ b. I don’t appreciate being made fun of.
7. a. Don’t worry. The arrangements are being made.
   b. I’m not happy about being made to do all the work.
8. a. Their son won’t do anything without being told.
   b. We were just being told the news when he called us.

Think about It
1. a. as a helping verb in a passive form
   2. a. as a helping verb in a passive form
   3. a. as a helping verb in a passive form
   4. a. as a main verb in a progressive form
   5. a. as a main verb in a progressive form
   6. a. as part of an active form of a gerund
   7. a. as a helping verb in a passive form
   8. a. as a helping verb in a passive form

Activity 19: Noticing To-Infinitives
1. If I could visit any country in the world, I would choose to visit Poland. I want to visit Poland because my grandparents grew up there. I would like to see their home and meet my relatives there. I also want to learn more about the culture and history of Poland.
2. If I could go anywhere in the world for two weeks, I would choose to go to Iran. My family is from Iran and I have always wanted to go there. To stay in Iran for two weeks would be a dream come true for me.
3. I have always wanted to go to Japan. To me, everything about Japan is interesting—the music, the food, the customs. I really want to learn the language, too. I would actually prefer not to travel with a friend or family member. By traveling alone, I think I would meet people more easily.

Think about It
Based on the above, it is more common to use a to-infinitive as an object.

Think about It

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To-infinitive with an object</th>
<th>To-infinitive with a prepositional phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to visit Poland</td>
<td>to go to Iran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to see their home and meet</td>
<td>to stay in Iran for two weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my relatives there</td>
<td>to go to Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to learn the language</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include: If I could go anywhere in the world for two weeks, I would go to New Zealand. A number of movies have been filmed in New Zealand, and I’d like to see some of the rugged terrain for myself. I’d also like to go white-water rafting in New Zealand.

Activity 20: Choosing To-Infinitive Subjects
1. To be rich isn’t everything, but it certainly helps.
2. To deny everything is to confess everything.
3. To lend [money] is to buy a quarrel.
4. To talk without thinking is to shoot without aiming.
5. To be brave from a distance is easy.
6. To teach is to learn.
7. To travel hopefully is a better thing than to arrive.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. To be rich doesn’t mean you are happy.
2. To deny everything is to admit it all.
3. To lend [money] often results in an argument.
4. To talk without thinking is to shoot blindly.
5. To be brave from a distance isn’t very hard.
6. To teach others is to teach yourself.
7. To travel hopefully is better than arriving.
Activity 21: Using It + Be + Adjective + To- Infinitives
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. It's not important to be rich.
2. It's important to listen to other people.
3. It's helpful to know about the past.
4. When something makes you angry, it's useful to stay calm.
5. It is better to have a brother or sister than to be an only child.
6. Today it's common for young people to study in other countries.
7. It used to be common to work for the same company your whole life.
8. Five hundred years ago, it was very dangerous to cross the ocean in a boat.
9. With a cell phone, it's easy for me to stay in touch with my friends.
10. It's more difficult to cook something from scratch than heat up a frozen pizza.
11. It is impossible to have a good relationship with someone when there is no trust.
12. It's good for high school students to start planning for their future before they graduate.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Think about It
Based on the examples, adjectives and noun phrases can follow a linking verb.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Activity 22: Noticing Linking Verbs + To- Infinitives

Activity 23: Using Linking Verbs + To- Infinitives

Activity 24: Error Correction

Activity 25: Using Verbs + To- Infinitives

Activity 26: Using Verbs + To- Infinitives

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

My last big decision was to buy a new washing machine. One of my worst decisions was to stop exercising every day.
Activity 27: Using a Verb + Noun Phrase + To-Infinitive
1. John advised his son to go to bed.
2. Matt promised his mother not to leave the house.
3. Rob asked James to move some furniture.
4. Mika reminded Toshi to put some gas in the car.
5. Sun-Hee warned Sarah not to drive on the icy roads.
6. Sam encouraged Hassan to go with him.
7. Asad can't wait for Khalid to get back to school.
8. Isabel arranged for Sara to meet Carla for coffee.

Activity 28: Choosing Wh-Words
Yes/No answers will vary.
1. Have you ever learned how to take someone's pulse?
2. Do you know what to do for a fever?
3. Do you know what to do if someone is choking?
4. Can you show me how to do CPR?
5. Do you know where to buy a first aid kit?
6. Can you explain what to do if someone stops breathing?
7. Do you know how to stop a nosebleed?
8. Do you know where to buy medicine?
9. Can you teach me how to give an injection?
10. Do you know who to call if you need emergency help?

Write about It
Answers will vary.

Activity 29: Using a Wh-Word + To-Infinitive
1. Could you show me how to turn on the GPS on this phone?
2. Could you tell me where to put this?
3. Can you teach me how to make this? It's delicious.
4. Can you tell me where to buy cheap furniture?
5. Can you show me how to get downtown?
6. Do you know how to fix this?
7. Can you explain to me how to do that?
8. Do you know how to save money on airfare?

Activity 30: Error Correction
1. I admire Michelle Kwan, the skater who competed in several Olympic Games but never won a gold medal. While this was a terrible disappointment for her, she continued to work hard. In fact, not getting a gold medal seemed to make her even more determined. I think Kwan is a role model for young people because she teaches them to know how to keep trying even when things are going badly.
2. One person who has had an important effect on my life is my boss. She is the person who advised me to improve my English. My job requires me to read business contracts and study trade agreements. Many of these contracts and agreements are in English, and I need to understand them perfectly. My boss also encouraged me to study American culture. She said that cultural differences often caused problems in business and that I needed to understand about these differences.

Activity 31: Gerund or To-Infinitive?
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I saw on your resume that you enjoy playing chess. How did you get interested in that?
2. Why do you want to work here?
3. What kind of people do you like to work with?
4. Were you ever asked to take a pay cut?
5. Where do you hope to be professionally in five years?
6. What made you choose to become an engineer?
7. When you begin working with new people, how do you get to understand them?
8. Describe a situation where you failed to reach a goal.

Think about It
You could use either the -ing or the to-infinitive form of the verb in sentences 3 and 7.

Activity 32: Noticing Differences in Meaning
1. A: Why did you leave the door open this morning?
   B: I left the door open? I don't remember doing that.
2. A: Where's your computer?
   B: Oh, no. I didn't remember to bring it.
3. A: Did you pick up some milk on your way home?
   B: Oh, sorry. I forgot to stop at the store.
4. A: Did you have a good time at the White House?
   B: Absolutely. I'll never forget being there.
5. A: Somebody has been smoking in here.
   B: Not me. I stopped smoking a year ago.
6. A: Why are you so late?
   B: I stopped to talk to some friends.
7. A: Why didn't you move the car this morning?
   B: I tried to move it but it wouldn't start.
8. A: Is David feeling any better?
   B: I don't think so. He tried taking a vacation but he still doesn't feel very good.
9. A: Are you tired?
   B: Yeah, really tired. I don't think I can go on doing this much longer.
10. A: What did your sister do after college?
    B: She went on to study engineering at graduate school.
11. A: Do you enjoy skiing?
    B: Not especially. In my opinion, skiing means being cold all day.
12. A: What happened to the window?
    B: I'm sorry. I didn't mean to break it.

Activity 33: Gerund or To-Infinitive?
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Most people go on vacation because they want to relax. However, if you are not well prepared, your vacation can turn into a disaster.

First, it is important to bring everything you need with you. Before you pack, check the weather at your destination so you know what kind of clothes you will need. Don't forget to pack a bathing suit if you are going to the beach. Remember to take your passport if you are going to another country.

You also have to think about the things you leave behind. Consider asking someone to keep an eye on your house while you are away. Don't forget to leave a house key and emergency phone numbers for this person. Ask the post office to hold your mail. If you get a daily newspaper, ask the newspaper office to stop your subscription while you are away.

Once you leave, stop worrying about things at home. Relax and enjoy your vacation.

Activity 34: Understanding Differences in Meaning
1. I totally forget about snowboarding in the summertime.
2. I forgot to shake hands and be friendly. It was an important lesson about leadership.
3. Don't call the world dirty because you forgot to clean your glasses.
4. Don't forget to love yourself.
5. I do remember actually learning chords to Beatles songs. I thought they were great songwriters.
6. In adversity, remember to keep an even mind.
7. I don't remember deciding to become a writer.
8. I once tried standing up on my toes to see far out in the distance, but I found that I could see much farther by climbing to a high place.
9. In my early days in Hollywood I tried to be economical. I designed my own clothes, much to my mother's distress.
10. I tried studying classical guitar when I was 16 but it got really hard. I could never play a lead to save my life.
11. I always tried to turn every disaster into an opportunity.

**Activity 35: Gerund or To- Infinitive?**

I had problems with this rice cooker from the first time I used it. The instruction booklet says to use 1 cup of water per 1 cup of rice. When I did this, the rice ended up being hard and burned. Next, I tried using 1 1/2 cups of water per 1 cup of rice. After cooking the rice for the correct amount of time, I found that the rice at the top was edible, but the rice at the bottom was burned. Then I decided to use 2 cups of water per cup of rice, and that worked just about right.

A second serious problem with this rice cooker is that the heat timer doesn’t always work. The heat timer has two positions. You press it down when you want to cook the rice and up when you just need to keep the rice warm. To cook the rice, you put the water and rice in the cooker and press the heat timer down. After about 15 minutes, the heat timer should pop up to the “keep warm” position. Instead, the rice keeps on cooking. This could be dangerous. It also means you can’t stop cooking the rice.

**Think about it**

There were two other forms: cooking and to cook the rice.

**Write about it**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

I have no complaints about this washing machine. It is so easy to use. To do your laundry, you just open the washer and put your clothes inside, then add detergent, bleach, and fabric softener. No more pouring in fabric softener just before the rinse cycle—this machine knows when to add it. This washer holds a lot of clothes, too. It’s easy to do laundry for the entire family.

**Activity 36: To- Infinitive or Bare Infinitive?**

Medical researchers say most people need to sleep more. When people don’t get enough rest, they often have more health problems and greater difficulty dealing with stress. A recent study suggests that short naps in the middle of the day can help reduce stress and improve general health.

Some companies in Europe and Latin America allow workers to nap in the middle of the day. They have workers go home and rest for a short time. (Some shops even close for a few hours around midday.) Most employers say that the naps make people feel more energetic when they return.

Now some American companies are letting employees nap after lunch, and the results have been positive. When workers stop to rest, it helps them to relax and makes them happier.

**Think about it**

**Verb + (noun phrase) + to-infinitive**

| need to sleep | can help reduce / improve |
| stop to rest | have workers go / reset |
| helps them to relax | make people feel |

**Activity 37: Using Bare Infinitives**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

1. Do you think parents should let their children stay home alone?
2. Do you think teachers should make their students do homework?
3. Do you think children should help their parents do housework?

4. Do you think wives should make their husbands work outside the home?
5. Do you think husbands should help their wives raise their children?
6. Do you think employers should help their employees pay for professional development?
7. Do you think husbands should let their wives spend time with their friends?
8. Do you think parents should make their children get jobs when they are in high school?
9. Do you think employers should make their employees work overtime?
10. Do you think teachers should let their students ask questions in class?

**Activity 38: Bare Infinitive, To- Infinitive, or Gerund?**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

A few years ago, you couldn’t have made me take a class online. It seemed to me that the experience of sitting in the same room and seeing a professor face-to-face was necessary for learning. After taking an online course, though, I now realize that being able to watch a lecture whenever I want has helped me learn better. Being able to pause and review the lecture over and over again lets me really think about the information. I’m not worrying about the whole time about trying to write down everything the professor says. And I can still interact with the professor and the other students by attending small group discussion sessions and by emailing the professor. I can definitely see myself taking more online courses in the future.

**Write about it**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

I don’t really like online learning. The classes can be more convenient because they’re available all the time and you don’t have to go to class at a specific time. But it’s easier for me to ask questions face-to-face. Expressing myself in writing isn’t something I’m good at, and I prefer talking to my professors. So I don’t think online classes are for me.

**Activity 39: Bare Infinitive or Gerund?**

**Answers will vary.** Possible answers include:

1. The last time I was in New York City, I saw a young woman walking down the street in a wedding dress. It was strange because she was alone.
2. One time my father saw some kids throw a bag of empty soda cans out of the window of their car. My father actually took up the bag, ran after them, and threw the bag back into their car.
3. One time I was on an airplane and we hit some turbulence. The plane started shaking and suddenly we all heard a voice laugh. It was a very deep laugh, and it sounded as if it was coming from outside the plane. What was it? Later I found out it was one of those birthday cards with sound. The card was in someone’s luggage in the overhead compartment, and the turbulence must have set it off.
4. At my college graduation on a hot May day, I felt the sweat dripping down my face and wanted to take off my gown, but I didn’t see anyone else doing that. In that heat, how could my friend next to me look so cool, even though he was wearing a long-sleeved shirt and dark pants? When I asked him, he shrugged and opened his gown. He was wearing only a pair of shorts, two sleeves, cut off at the elbows, and two pant legs, cut off at the knees. The sleeves and pant legs were held up with rubber bands! With his gown on, you couldn’t tell at all.
5. One day I was walking down Lexington Avenue in New York. A handsome man was walking toward me. When he got close, he
Write about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Activity 41: Adjectives and Noun Phrases + To-Infinities
1. I don’t need anything to do.
2. I have work to do.
3. San Francisco is a great city to visit.
4. She’s looking for an apartment to rent.
5. He didn’t give me anything to say.
6. Mississippi is a hard word to spell.
7. A good way to meet people is joining a club.
8. I have lots of things to keep track of.
9. Playing a game is a great way to relax.
10. Not everyone has the opportunity to go to college.

Activity 42: Adjectives and Nouns + To-Infinities
1. On a rainy day, I’m not likely to sit outside.
2. I’m always ready to help my friends.
3. I would never be willing to steal someone’s money.
4. Babies are apt to start crying at any time.
5. Newborn babies aren’t able to walk.
6. Teachers are likely to give homework.
7. Many people never have the opportunity to travel abroad.
8. Exercising is a great way to reduce stress.

Write about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Activity 43: Using a To-Infinitive of Purpose
1. I would never be willing to cheat on a test.
2. Babies are apt to make a mess when they eat.
3. Teachers are likely to ask questions in class.
4. Many people never have the opportunity to see Mt. Everest.
5. Exercising is a great way to stay healthy.

Activity 44: Noticing Different Forms of To-Infinitives
1. A: Where’s Mary? She should be here by now.
   B: Yeah. She seems to have forgotten about the meeting.
2. A: What’s the matter with the refrigerator?
   B: What do you mean?
   A: Well, look at the water. It seems to be leaking.
3. A: Did you tell your sister to do her homework?
   B: I don’t think she needs to be told.
4. A: Are you going to help Sam move?
   B: I offered but he doesn’t like to be helped.
5. A: Was your new boss at the dinner?
   B: Yes, and I’m so happy to have finally met her.
6. A: Do you have any money on you?
   B: No, I’m still waiting to be paid.
7. A: How’s your new job?
   B: I love it. It’s so nice to be working for a good company.
8. A: Where’s all the food?
   B: Somebody seems to have eaten it all.
9. A: Why is Anne in such a good mood?
   B: I think she’s just relieved to have finally finished her project!
10. A: Do you want to be picked up Friday morning? I think I’m going to the same meeting.
    B: Oh, that’d be nice. Then I won’t have to drive.
11. A: The snow finally seems to be stopping. Do you want to go out?
    B: Sure.
12. A: So which letters are ready to be mailed?
    B: Well, the ones I put by the front door. The rest can wait.

Think about It

Progressive form
(to be + present participle) | Perfect form
(to have + past participle)
--|--
to be leaking | to have been

to be working | to have finally met

to be stopping | to have eaten

Active form
(to + base form) | Passive form
(to be + past participle)
to do | to be told

to help | to be helped

to drive | to be paid

to go out | to be picked up

to be mailed | to mail

Write about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Activity 45: Answering Questions with a To-Infinitive
1. A: Why are you calling Matt again?
   B: To ask him a question.
2. A: Are you going out so early?
   B: To get some exercise.
3. A: Why did you turn the TV back on?
   B: To hear the weather report.
4. A: Why did you want to see me?
   B: Just to talk.
5. A: Where’d Sam go?
   B: To buy something for dinner.
6. A: What are you going to use all these rocks for?
   B: To build a wall.
7. A: Do you need some help?
   B: To do what?
   A: To clean up the kitchen.
   B: Sure. I’d love some help.
8. A: Can I use the car today?
   B: What for?
   A: Just to go to the store.
9. A: What do you need to go to the store for?
   B: To get some eggs.
10. A: What do you need eggs for?
    B: To make a cake.

Activity 46: Noticing To-Infinitives in Conversation
1. A: Do you want to do something tonight?
   B: Sure, I’d love to.
2. A: Did you go for a swim?
   B: No, I was afraid to.
3. A: Can you help me with this?
   B: Sure, I’d be glad to.
4. A: Did you stop at the grocery store?
   B: No, I didn’t need to.
5. A: Did you play tennis?
   B: No, I didn’t want to.
6. A: Do you want to join us for lunch?
   B: I’d love to but I’ve already eaten.
7. A: We’re going for coffee. Want to come?
   B: I’d like to but I don’t have time.
8. A: Did you get a hold of Anna?
   B: I’d like to but she’s not at home.

Think about it
The speakers left out the verbs that follow to in their responses because the meaning is understood from the questions.

Activity 47: Using Gerunds in Conversation
1. A: Would you mind helping me with this?
   B: Helping you with what?
   A: Moving this table.
   B: Oh, sure.
2. A: Did you postpone going again?
   B: Going where?
   A: To register the car.
   B: Oh, no. I forgot.
3. A: Don’t you love watching this?
   B: Watching what?
   A: The ice skating.
   B: Oh, is there ice skating on TV?
4. A: I wish you would stop doing that.
   B: Doing what?
   A: Changing the channel every ten seconds.
5. A: I hate reading about this.
   B: Reading about what?
   A: The economy. I’m sick of it.
6. A: When are you going to start cleaning?
   B: Cleaning what?
   A: You know. The garage.
7. A: I really don’t enjoy doing this.
   B: Doing what? You mean cleaning the windows?
   A: Right.
8. A: Did you finish doing everything?
   B: What do you mean?
   A: You know. Doing the dishes and putting away the food.
   B: Yeah, everything’s done.
Activity 52: Writing a Series of Ideas

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. You can improve your grades by studying hard, reading the textbook, and practicing your speaking.
2. Three of my personal goals are earning a degree, getting a good job, and having a family.
3. For me, the three worst household chores are doing the dishes, cleaning the floors, and cleaning the shower.
4. For many people, “fun” involves playing games, watching movies, and spending time with their friends.
5. A healthy lifestyle requires eating fresh food, drinking lots of water, and exercising regularly.
6. The three most difficult things for a parent are being patient, being consistent, and managing time for their children and for themselves.
7. Parents can promote good reading habits in their children by reading to their children, encouraging their children to read, and reading good books themselves.
8. Three important human rights are having freedom, being in control of one’s own body and thoughts, and being able to get an education.

Wrap-Up

A

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

A: Do you agree or disagree with this statement? It is important never to contradict your boss at work.

B: I disagree because nobody is perfect and even your boss can make a mistake. If you think your boss is really saying something wrong, you need to speak up. At the same time, I think you need to be very polite so your boss doesn’t get angry.

B

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

I would advise a person in this situation to talk to his manager. It’s not fair for Paul to keep doing someone else’s work. His manager needs to tell Paul’s co-worker to stop talking on the phone and playing games and to spend more time doing his work.

C

Answers will vary.

D

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

Owning a car has several disadvantages. Perhaps the biggest disadvantage is that having a car is very expensive. When you own a car, it costs money to keep it in good shape. You also need to pay for car insurance and gasoline, and this can get very expensive. Another disadvantage is that you need to have a safe place to park your car at night, and this can be difficult if you live in a big city. While many people think that they can’t live without a car, there are actually some good reasons to live without a car.
Unit 12

Warm-Up

A
Agree/disagree answers will vary.

B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>True</th>
<th>False</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. A noun clause always comes at the end of a sentence.</td>
<td></td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Noun clauses usually answer the question what.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Noun clauses always begin with the word that.</td>
<td></td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. A noun clause has a subject and a verb.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. We often use noun clauses in sentences about opinions or feelings.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C
noun clause: What is wrong today

Activity 1: Identifying Subjects and Verbs in Noun Clauses
1. I'm not interested in how people move, but what moves them.
2. I don't care what people say about me.
3. Keep trying and see what fate brings.
4. Don't ask whether it is going to be easy. Ask whether it is worth it.
5. Sometimes it is more important to discover what one cannot do than what one can do.
7. I often think that the night is more alive and more richly colored than the day.
8. My doctor told me I never walk again. My mother told me I would. I believed my mother.
9. It took me a hundred years to figure out I can't change the world. I can only change Bessie.
10. If he shot himself, his illness may explain why he did it.
11. He moved! I didn't know that.
12. Did you hear that loud noise?

Think about It

Yes, there's an adverb clause in quotation 12, and it's inside the noun clause.

Think about It
Report someone's words or ideas: 8
Express a degree of certainty or an attitude: 1, 2, 5, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14

Activity 2: Identifying Noun Clauses
Students will identify how each noun clause is used in each sentence in the Think about It activity.

1. Some experts believe that Van Gogh was the greatest artist of all time.
2. It's hard to believe that Van Gogh was once almost unknown.
3. Most people know that Van Gogh painted Starry Night.
4. Many people don't realize that he also painted a large number of pictures of himself.
5. One of Van Gogh's problems was that few people appreciated his art.
6. That he sold very few paintings during his lifetime is surprising.
7. Van Gogh was killed by a gun. Whether or not he killed himself is uncertain.
8. There have been several documentaries focusing on how he died.
9. The truth is that Van Gogh suffered from mental illness all his life.
10. If he shot himself, his illness may explain why he did it.
11. What Van Gogh accomplished in his lifetime is amazing.
12. Today most people agree that he made a huge contribution to the art world.

Activity 4: Identifying Uses of That
1. This is the house that Bill Gates lived in. c
2. We all know that she's intelligent. d
3. I like that painting in our classroom. b
4. She thinks that I'm wrong. d
5. I decided that I should leave. d
6. That cannot be true! a
7. Is this the restaurant that you want to go to? c
8. Let's rent that new action movie. b
9. That's not what I said. a
10. The problem is that I have to work on Saturday. d
11. He moved! I didn't know that. a
12. Did you hear that loud noise? b
Activity 5: Noticing That Clauses
1. It's obvious that you learn a lot when you travel.
2. It surprises me that people travel to other countries. I like staying at home.
3. Traveling allows you to understand the similarities and differences between different people and places.
4. The fact that travel can be expensive doesn't bother me. I love it!
5. I enjoy traveling because it gives me the chance to see beautiful new places.
6. The fact that you can meet new people and experience different cultures is the best thing about visiting a new country.
7. It's very clear that travel can change your view of the world.
8. I think it's possible that traveling makes you more confident in life.
9. I love to simply get on a plane, train, or bus and go somewhere new!
10. For me, it's disappointing that I can't travel all the time.

Think about It
It: 1, 2, 7
The fact: 4, 6

Think about It
It may be because beginning a sentence with a that clause isn't very common.

Activity 6: Giving Opinions with That Clauses
1. It's obvious that Paris is popular.
2. It's annoying that there are long lines for the Eiffel Tower.
3. It's not surprising that the food is generally very good.
4. It's appropriate that Paris is called "the City of Light."
5. It's wonderful that they light up the Eiffel Tower at night.
6. It's possible that the shopping in Paris is the best in the world.
7. It's too bad that many people visit the Louvre Museum just to see the Mona Lisa.
8. It's great that you can go on a boat ride on the Seine River and canals.
9. It's interesting that so many famous people are buried in the Père-Lachaise cemetery.
10. It's well known that the Sorbonne is one of Europe's oldest universities.

Think about It
The original sentences are factual. The revised sentences express the writer's attitude about the information.

Activity 7: Using That Clauses
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. It's surprising that some people don't like to study grammar.
2. The fact that the climate is changing worries me.
3. It annoys me that some people don't use their turn signals.
4. The fact that it's snowing now doesn't surprise me.
5. It's strange that people don't spend more time outdoors.
6. It bothers me that people are mean to other people.
7. The fact that I have a day off makes me happy.
8. It's too bad that I missed your concert.
9. It's obvious that she needs to work on this more.
10. The fact that you finished early pleases me.

Activity 8: Identifying That Clauses as Subject Complements
Students will underline the subject in the Think about It activity.
Social media provide great ways to share news and connect with people. But what about the disadvantages of social media? One of the biggest problems with any activity on the Internet is that you risk your privacy. To use a social media site, you have to provide personal information. The problem is that other people can find and use this information—people you don't know at all. This is called identity theft. Criminals use this information to get credit cards or make purchases in your name. They know that police rarely investigate online crime. The fact is that this can happen to anyone. So, always be cautious online. Remember that someone may be watching!

Activity 9: Using That Clauses as Subject Complements
1. a. One problem in some areas is the hot climate. One problem in some areas is that it's very hot and dry.
   b. One result is crop failure. One result is that farmers cannot grow enough food.
2. a. One advantage of computers is the ability to work from home. One advantage is that people can work from home.
   b. A disadvantage is the lack of human interaction. A disadvantage is that you don't see other people regularly.
3. a. A big concern is worldwide debt. A big concern is that countries all over the world owe money.
   b. The result is poverty and unemployment. The result is that people have no money and no jobs.
4. a. The main problem at the office is staff dissatisfaction. The main problem is that employees are unhappy.
   b. The reason is bad management. The reason is that managers have made poor decisions.
5. a. The biggest problem in the city is the amount of traffic. The biggest problem is that there are too many cars.
   b. One cause is the lack of public transportation. One cause is that public transportation isn't good.

Think about It
The first sentence in each pair sounds more academic or formal because they don't have an expression of attitude or certainty.

Activity 10: Using That Clauses after Adjectives
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Their presentation was inaccurate. The sales team was worried. The sales team was worried that their presentation was inaccurate.
2. The number of hurricanes is increasing. Climate scientists are concerned. Climate scientists are concerned that the number of hurricanes is increasing.
3. The archaeologists were able to excavate the site. They were grateful. The archaeologists were grateful that they were able to excavate the site.
4. They would get an interview with the celebrity. The journalists were sure. The journalists were sure that they would get an interview with the celebrity.
5. She would win the election. The candidate was confident. The candidate was confident that she would win the election.
6. During the investigation, the detective would solve the case. He was convinced. During the investigation, the detective was convinced that he would solve the case.
7. Scientists will find a cure for the disease. They are certain. Scientists are certain that they will find a cure for the disease.
8. Three students failed the exam. The professor is disappointed. The professor is disappointed that three students failed the exam.
9. The patient needs surgery. The doctors are positive. The doctors are positive that the patient needs surgery.

10. The rescue workers arrived in time to help. They were relieved. The rescue workers were relieved that they arrived in time to help.

11. Her paintings are selling so well. The artist is amazed. The artist is amazed that her paintings are selling so well.

12. He needed to decrease the workers' wages. The manager was sorry. The manager was sorry that he needed to decrease the workers' wages.

Activity 11: Writing That Clauses

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. I'm positive that I'll continue to study English.
2. I'm glad that I get a day off once in a while.
3. I'm confident that we'll get the work done on time.
4. I'm sorry that we're not able to attend your dinner.
5. I'm concerned that you're not sleeping enough.
6. I'm grateful that you were there to help me when I needed it.
7. I'm amazed that you were able to find me here.
8. I'm encouraged that the project is going so well.
9. I'm sure that we'll be able to come up with a compromise.
10. I'm happy that you're pleased with the product we sent you.

Activity 12: Using That Clauses as Objects

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. I know that there are many types of endangered birds.
2. I understand that many different species of penguins are endangered.
3. Scientists believe that human activity is a threat to birds.
4. Many people assume that one of the biggest threats to birds is agriculture.
5. I suppose that the changing climate is another reason birds are in danger.
6. I guess that some types of birds probably can't be saved.
7. I feel that they should be protected.
8. I see that some governments are protecting areas for birds to live in.
9. I imagine that some charities give money to protect birds.
10. I think that people should take an interest in wildlife.

Think about It

Instead of being statements, the rewritten sentences express the subject's attitude toward what is being said.

Activity 13: Reporting Your Thoughts and Beliefs

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

I know that the moon goes around the earth. I assume that space exploration is extremely expensive. I hope that we will discover life on other planets. I don't suppose that I'll go to the moon. I doubt that people will take vacations in space someday. I guess that space travel is becoming cheaper. I believe that space exploration is important. I understand that space is endless. I regret that I can't travel into space. I think that scientists are searching for signs of life on Mars.

Activity 14: Using That Clauses as Objects

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:

1. I know that he's an accountant.
2. I know that he enjoys going to baseball games.
3. I know that he likes my spinach dip.
4. I know that he lives near Boston.
5. I know that he's married and has two children.

6. I know that he wants to be a circus clown.
7. I know that he's really good at trivia.
8. I know that he likes slapstick comedies.
9. I know that he was born in Italy.
10. I know that he's afraid of spiders and snakes.

Activity 15: Using That Clauses in Conversation

1. A: You can leave now.
   B: I know I can. I just need to finish one thing.
   A: He explained that we need to summarize the text.
   B: I just like it.
   A: I believe there's one.
   B: I suppose she's coming later.
   A: I love my job.
   B: I imagine you do.
   A: I'm hungry!
   B: I guess I am, too.
   A: Joe's getting married.
   B: I know he is. I heard.

Think about It

Short answers: 1, 2, 8, 10

Think about It

Yes, that can be added to these sentences. The sentences might sound more formal. No, the meaning of the sentences doesn't change.

Activity 16: Omitting That in Conversation

1. A: What did Professor Cook just say?
   B: He explained that we need to summarize the text.
   A: What did the driver say?
   B: He argued that it wasn't his fault. It was an accident.
   A: Did you hear Joey's news?
   B: Yes, I heard that he'd been promoted.
   A: What did you do when she asked you to help her?
   B: I just replied that I was too busy.
   A: Shall I call Nick?
   B: No, I think he'll call us later.
   A: It's already noon. Where's the train?
   B: I hope it isn't late.
   A: Where's Amy?
   B: I just replied that I was too busy.
   A: I'm hungry!
   B: I guess I am, too.
   A: I'm hungry!
   B: I guess I am, too.

Think about It

Instead of being statements, the rewritten sentences express the subject's attitude toward what is being said.

Activity 17: Using the Base Form Verb in a That Clause

1. I recommend that you be on time for the lecture.
   2. It is critical that he go to a doctor.
3. I insist that you pay your rent.
4. She suggests that we keep notes.
5. He demands that he see our passports.
6. It's important that we get to the exam room on time.
7. He proposes that she go back home early.
8. She asks that we not make too much noise.
9. She advises that he leave immediately.
10. It's essential that everyone be careful on board the ship.
11. She asks that we be quiet in the theater.
12. He requests that we not park there.

Think about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
People are likely to give orders or strong recommendations such as these in emergency situations.

Activity 18: Using That + the Base Form of the Verb
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I always recommend that everyone research the company in advance.
2. It's essential that women wear appropriate clothing.
3. I would advise that men wear a suit and tie.
4. I feel it's critical that you not criticize your previous job.
5. It's always very important that we learn about the position.
6. It's vital that an interviewee act appropriately during the interview.
7. Many people insist that you show up ten minutes early.
8. I suggest that you talk to people who work at the company.
9. Most employers ask that a job candidate go through a background check.
10. Finally, it is important that every interviewee thank the interviewer for the opportunity.

Activity 19: Identifying Wh- Noun Clauses
Students will identify how the wh- clauses are used in the Think about It activity.

A new documentary on TV this spring examines what happens when we see something, or someone, beautiful. It's a program about things that have symmetry, that is, things that are mirror images of one another. The documentary focuses on how symmetry affects us. What's interesting about this is that every human being reacts to symmetry. As far as humans are concerned, symmetry is almost equivalent to beauty. And there's no doubt at all that symmetry is important. Think about it: almost everything around us is symmetrical. What you're sitting on is symmetrical. Butterflies have symmetry—each half of a butterfly is identical. A glass or a plate has symmetry. In fact, it's pretty hard to think of anything that isn't symmetrical in some way.

The most interesting question is why we find symmetry attractive. It seems that symmetry appeals to us because we like things that match. We are naturally attracted to people whose faces are symmetrical. Take a look at your friends! Essentially, the presenter suggests that we can't help falling in love with symmetry.

Activity 20: Using Wh- Clauses
1. I know her age. I know how old she is.
2. I know his favorite food. I know what he likes most.
3. I can't repeat her words. I can't repeat what she said.
4. I don't know the school he attends. I don't know where he goes to school.
5. I don't understand this word. I don't understand what the word fortunate means.
6. I love your clothes! I love what you're wearing!
7. I don't know the problem. I don't know what's wrong.
8. I remember your address. I remember where you live.
9. I don't understand her behavior. I don't understand why she acts that way.
10. I know the subject of the presentation. I know what it's about.
11. I don't know him. I don't know who he is.
12. I don't understand your actions. I don't understand why you're doing that.

Activity 21: Word Order in Wh- Clauses
1. Can you tell me how you got to school today?
2. Do you remember when the last day of class is?
3. Can you tell me what time it is?
4. Do you know when we have our next holiday break?
5. Can you explain why you moved to this city?
6. Do you know how old your parents are?
7. Can you tell me when your grandparents were born?
8. Do you remember where your grandparents grew up?
9. Can you explain why you study English?
10. Do you understand what we learned in class today?

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I like to talk about what's happening in the news with my friends.
I was confused about what the teacher said in class today.
I was upset about how I did on that test.

Activity 22: Wh- Clauses with Prepositions
1. I can't talk about what I saw.
2. My friends were upset about what you said.
3. He knows nothing except what I told him.
4. I'm confused about where my father went.
5. No one is interested in why she is laughing.
6. You seem nervous about what he might say.
7. I was fascinated by what he was saying.
8. The readers were happy with how the story ended.
9. There was a lot of discussion about why some people should attend the meeting and others shouldn't.
10. We're thrilled with what you've done.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I like to talk about what's happening in the news with my friends.
I was confused about what the teacher said in class today.
I was upset about how I did on that test.

Activity 23: Error Correction
1. I have often wondered where do birds go at night.
2. What I think isn't important. You should ask a zoologist.
3. I like what we are listening to. Is it jazz?
4. Please tell me where the station is.
5. What's important is the scene of the crime. (no errors)
6. What did you told me isn't correct. It's not the right answer.
7. No, I have no idea where does she lives.
8. Tell me about what you liked doing when you were a child.
9. I'm annoyed about that what he did.
10. I don't understand what the problem is.

Activity 24: Recognizing the Functions of If/Whether Clauses
1. Everyone is talking about whether or not the economy will improve soon.
2. No one is sure if scientists will ever cure cancer.
3. Everyone wonders if we’ll ever have world peace. O
4. Whether or not global warming will ever slow down is a big question. S
5. One question is whether or not we can save our forests. SC
6. I don’t know if it’s a good idea for people to get married when they are young. O
7. Leaders need to make a decision about whether or not they will cooperate. OP
8. Does anyone know if there’s life on other planets? O
9. It’s not clear whether or not technology has improved our lives. AC

Activity 26: Distinguishing Noun Clauses and Adverb Clauses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. My teacher would be able to help me if she were here.</th>
<th>Noun Clause</th>
<th>Adverb Clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. You may feel discouraged if you get a poor grade.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Sometimes I’m not sure if I’ve understood the lectures.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I don’t know if I want to drop this class or not.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. You won’t do well if you wait until the last minute to do the assignment.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I’m not certain if I can finish this essay in time.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. You won’t understand everything if you don’t do the reading before class.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. I can’t decide if I want to transfer to a different school.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. I wonder if the academic advisor can help me.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. You can consider repeating a course if you finish it with a low grade.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Ask your classmates for help if you need more ideas.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. I can’t tell if I’m doing well or not.</td>
<td>☑</td>
<td>☑</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Write about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I don’t know if the test is today or tomorrow. You’ll do well on the test if you read the chapter and do the homework.

Think about It

Adjective complements: 3, 6

Activity 27: Using or Not

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I’m not sure if I’ll go to Tibet or Switzerland.
2. My professor and I talked about whether or not Latin and Greek were important.
3. The question is whether we should move or stay where we are.
4. I just can’t decide if I should call the company and complain or not.
5. A doctor can tell you whether or not you have a real problem.
6. Whether you join us or stay at home is really your decision.
7. Well, I have no idea whether or not you need to be worried!
8. I just don’t know if I was awake at the time or not.
9. I wonder if it’s a good idea or not to take so many risks.
10. The real question here is whether or not to sell the house.

Activity 28: Using Noun Clauses with If and Whether

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I don’t know if I’m going to class tomorrow.
2. I’m not sure if it’ll rain tonight.
3. I can’t decide whether or not I’m going to take English next semester.
4. I don’t know if our class will finish on time.
5. I’m not sure whether or not I’ll buy a new computer this year.
6. I don’t know whether the next assignment will be difficult.
7. I’m not sure if information on the Internet is always true.
8. I can’t decide whether to eat in or eat out tonight.
9. I’m not certain whether I’ll ask friends over this weekend.
10. I don’t know if my favorite TV show is going to be on tonight.

Write about It

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I don’t know if I’ll travel much next year. How about you? I’m not sure whether or not my car will start in this cold weather. I can’t decide whether to go for a walk or take a nap.

Activity 29: Noun Clause Review

Students will identify the function of each noun clause in the Question #1.

The Ancient Art of Feng Shui

Have you ever wondered if you can make your life better? Maybe in the past you’ve taken up a new sport, started eating more healthily, or changed your lifestyle in some way. But have you considered changing the place you live in? The art of feng shui is well known nowadays because people have been practicing it for years. Whether or not it works is uncertain, but many people arrange their bedrooms, offices, and apartments according to the principles of feng shui. They firmly believe that a few simple actions have a positive influence on their lives. In 2005, Disneyland Hong Kong even moved its main entrance after talking to a feng shui expert!

But what exactly is feng shui? Feng shui originally came from China. In English, these two words mean “wind and water.” It’s a belief that we can balance human life with our environment. The main concept behind feng shui is something called chi—the Chinese word for energy flow. And the question is whether or not we can encourage this force to move in more positive ways around the spaces we live in. At its simplest, feng shui is the examination of how the placement of objects around you can affect the movement of energy.

Feng shui specialists say that the way you design the space you live in can benefit your life. For example, make sure that your home is tidy and that you have good-quality light and air. It’s not certain if you’ll see immediate results, of course, but learning a little about this ancient art may make life more pleasant.

QUESTIONS

2. I would arrange my home according to feng shui. Right now it’s cluttered and messy, and that’s not healthy.

Activity 30: Using Indirect Speech

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. She said that the next election would take place in four years.
2. He said that the candidates in the election had been chosen.
3. She said that George W. Bush had a collection of signed baseballs.
4. He said that Thomas Jefferson had spoken six different languages.
5. She said that the next election would be exciting.
6. He said that Theodore Roosevelt had been the first president to travel outside the United States.
7. She said that Theodore Roosevelt had been the first president to be known by his initials: T. R.
8. He said that Lyndon B. Johnson had been an auto mechanic and teacher.
9. She said that the capital of Liberia was named after James Monroe.
10. He said that Herbert Hoover’s son had had two alligators!

Activity 31: Using Indirect Speech
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. He said that hope was a good breakfast but a bad supper.
2. She said that all children had creative power.
3. He said that a quick temper would make a fool of you soon enough.
4. He said that it was better to be alone than in bad company.
5. He said that money was only useful when you got rid of it.
6. She said that the only thing better than singing was more singing.
7. He said that it was going to be a season with lots of accidents.
8. He said that we didn’t know a millionth of one percent about anything.
9. He said that you could only lead from behind.
10. She said that you could not find peace by avoiding life.
11. He said that a man might be a fool and not know it.
12. He said that everybody was talking about the economy.

Activity 33: Using Indirect Speech
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. She said she didn’t want to go.
2. He said he’d just seen his brother.
3. He said that he was going on vacation next week.
4. She said that she had left her book there.
5. He said that they were going to the library.
6. She said that they had to sell the house.
7. He said that they had enjoyed the match.
8. She said Max was working there with her.
9. He said he was very happy in London.
10. He said that he’d meet us there at two tomorrow.
11. She said she’d call me. She promised.
12. She said that I could help her with her assignment.
13. He said he’d been working.
14. She said that they were having a meeting.
15. She said that she wasn’t there.

Write about It
Answers will vary. Possible answers include: Eleanor Roosevelt said it was not fair to ask of others what you were unwilling to do yourself. Chinua Achebe said one of the true tests of integrity was its blunt refusal to be compromised. Akira Kurosawa said that in a mad world, only the mad were sane.

Activity 35: Reporting Facts
1. The professor said that the total number of people who have ever lived is about 108 billion.
2. The report says that 3 percent of the world’s energy comes from wind power.
3. The artist told us that Mickey Mouse’s ears are perfect circles.
4. Our coach said that basketball has been part of the Summer Olympics since 1936.
5. The tour guide said that kangaroos can’t walk backward.
6. The dictionary says the word orchestra means “dancing place” in Greek.
7. The farmer told us that the average chicken lays 250–270 eggs a year.
8. Our professor said Shakespeare never used the word October in his plays.

Think about It
No, it was not necessary because the information in the noun clauses is still true or relevant.

Activity 36: Reporting Questions
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. What are you doing tomorrow?
2. What did you do yesterday?
3. Have you ever been to Paris?
4. Are you going to go to the concert next week?
5. Did you come to class last week?
6. Where does your family live?
7. Where is the best place to get coffee?
8. How often do you do your homework?
9. Are you a good artist?
10. Where do you get your lunch?
11. Were you a student here last year?
12. Does your commute to school take a long time?

Activity 37: Using Say and Tell
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. Why didn’t you tell me that you couldn’t go?
2. I never said that you couldn’t go.
3. She didn’t tell me we had to leave.
4. How do you feel now that they told you that you’ve won the prize?
5. He says/said that our presentation will be a great success.
6. Did/Has anyone told/told the students how to find the lecture hall?
7. She said it was going to rain tomorrow.
8. I wish you had told me you were coming!
9. The doctor says/said I’m very healthy.
10. Why didn’t he tell me that I should book the flight?

Activity 38: Using Tell
1. Jim told Tom that he didn’t believe him.
2. Maria told Susan that her book had won a prize.
3. Ann told June that it was raining.
4. Martin told Nick that he was selling his apartment.
5. Louise told Bill that the meeting is tomorrow.
6. Andrew told James that he had quit his job last month.
7. Sally told Jo that her daughter was studying music.
8. David told Stephen that he’d already been to Rome.
9. James told Nicky that it was too late to leave.
10. Sam told Ben that he had done the research.

Activity 39: Using Different Reporting Verbs
1. My brother finally admitted that he took my phone.
2. The customer complained that the computer is too expensive.
3. I wonder if the meeting has started because I can’t find my colleagues.
4. The terrified child shouted that he was in danger.
5. Several journalists reported that the situation was calm.
6. At today’s conference, the president announced that the economy is improving.
7. In the meeting this morning, a co-worker agreed that I was right.
8. My old friend wanted to know whether we met in 2007 or 2008.
9. The team leader proposed that we try a different plan.
10. Two people reported that they had seen the suspect.
11. The little girl claimed that she'd seen a dinosaur.
12. We both wonder whether there is a better solution to the problem.

Think about It
Reported questions: 3, 8, 12.
I know this because the noun clause is an if/whether clause.

Activity 40: Expressing an Opinion or Uncertainty
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I think you're right.
I don't know whether I like this dish.
I don't care if he's home.
I don't think anyone called me.
I wonder if it'll rain.
I guess I'll work tonight.
I don't think it's wrong.
I think it's fun to travel.

Activity 41: Using Noun Clauses in Speaking
Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I think you should probably see a doctor.
2. I think you really ought to study.
3. I guess what you really must do is apologize.
4. I think maybe it's time you went home.
5. I guess maybe the question is really whether you want to switch colleges.
6. I think you probably should leave as soon as possible. It's late.
7. I think you really need to decide whether to go or not.
8. I think maybe the problem is that you're making too much noise.

Activity 42: Contradicting Someone
1. A: So you said you're buying an apartment?
   B: No, that's not what I said. I said I was moving to a new apartment! I can't afford to buy one!
2. A: Pam tells me you're moving to Paris! You have family there, don't you?
   B: Yes, but that's not why I'm moving. I'm moving because I got a great new job.
   B: Oh. That's weird. That's not where I left it. I thought I put it over there.
4. A: Thanks for your email. I love the picture of your dog. It's so funny!
   B: What dog? I sent you a document. Let me see that. That's not what I attached! How did that get there?
5. A: The pasta you made was delicious. You used olive oil in the sauce, didn't you?
   B: Nope. That's not what I used. It has cream in it.
6. A: I saw you in the supermarket this morning.
   B: That's impossible. That's not where I was. I was at work.
7. A: So this morning I called your company and spoke to your manager.
   B: That's not who you spoke to. You spoke to my assistant!
8. A: OK, I've figured it out. To turn the phone's volume down, you press this button.
   B: No, that's not what you do. You just press and hold this button for two seconds.

Activity 43: Using Wh-Clefts
1. What this class is going to be is a thorough examination of all aspects of sociology
2. First of all, I want you to think about what you already know about sociology. What I want is your ideas as well as mine for each class discussion.
3. My goal is to provide a framework for you. What I want to explain to you is exactly what the study of sociology is.
4. You'll need to do some research during the semester. What this means is you'll need to spend time online and in the library.
5. I'm here to help you, of course. What I suggest is a weekly appointment with me in my office to discuss the topics we cover.
6. It will help you to work with your classmates. So, what I also recommend is that you form study groups and meet regularly in the library.

Activity 44: Identifying Reported Ideas in Academic Writing
Students circle the reporting verbs in Question #2.
Staring out the window at the trees and plants outside isn't necessarily a sign that you are daydreaming. You might actually be recharging your batteries. Recent studies published in the Journal of Environmental Psychology and reprinted on the website Science Daily (www.sciencedaily.com) demonstrate that being around nature can give you more energy and make you feel more alive. A lot of people think that they can wake themselves up with a cup of coffee or an energy drink, but Richard Ryan, author and professor of psychology at the University of Rochester, says that connecting with nature works better.

A number of studies have shown that hiking or walking in the woods gives people energy, but scientists weren't sure if the physical activity or simply being around other people during these activities explained the increase in energy. The new studies went further. The researchers tested college students in natural settings and inside buildings. They found that spending time in nature or even imagining a natural environment increased the students' vitality. Physical activity was not the key factor. They had more energy simply because of the presence of nature.

The good news is that just 20 minutes a day in nature is enough to create the beneficial effects of greater energy. According to Ryan, "Nature is something within which we flourish, so having it be more a part of our lives is critical, especially when we live and work in built environments." We all know that we feel tired when we're indoors all day. Now we know how we can make things better.

QUESTIONS
1. Reporting other people's research or ideas: that being around nature can give you more energy and make you feel more alive; that they can wake themselves up with a cup of coffee or an energy drink; that connecting with nature works better; that hiking or walking in the woods gives people energy; that spending time in nature or even imagining a natural environment increased the students' vitality.
Activity 46: Expressing Opinions

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
1. I think that an actor needs to have an excellent memory.
2. It’s clear that a doctor needs to understand how the body works.
3. It’s important that a teacher be able to be patient when students don’t understand.
4. I believe that an architect needs to be good at math.
5. I think that a writer needs to have a good imagination.
6. It’s important that an attorney understand the law well.
7. I think that a psychiatrist needs to be sympathetic to the ideas of others.
8. I believe that a business executive needs to have the best interests of the customer in mind.

Wrap-Up

A

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
Example (picture 1): I’m not sure who they are. It’s possible that they’re a husband and wife and they’re on vacation. They went shopping in the market square and saw a bird that was in a cage. Maybe they’ll decide to buy the bird.

B

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
I don’t completely agree with the first statement. I love the job I have, but I didn’t really choose it. What makes it fun is the energy I put into it. I don’t know whether I’ll do the same kind of work all my life, but for now, it’s fine. What people don’t realize is that you can make your work satisfying if you try hard enough. The problem is that people often don’t see that.

C

Answers will vary.

D

Answers will vary. Possible answers include:
“I was reading a health and fitness website and this is what I found. It’s an example of a wh-noun clause as object. ‘People should buy just what they need, serve smaller portions, and understand the difference.’"